

Aristotle's Nicomachean Ethics

Books II-III

Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and
Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman

Aristotle's Nicomachean Ethics Books II-III
Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Beta Edition

© 2018 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

The Greek text is the edition by Ingram Bywater first published in 1890.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9991884-4-6

Published by Geoffrey Steadman
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman, GFS Porson, New Athena Unicode

geoffreysteadman@gmail.com

Aristotle's *Nicomachean Ethics* Books II and III

Core Vocabulary (10 or more times)

The following is a running list of all 152 words that occur ten or more times in the Books II and III. An alphabetized list is found in the glossary. These words are not included in the commentary and therefore must be reviewed as soon as possible. The number of occurrences, noted at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author. The left column indicates the page number where the word first occurs.

page

- 01 **ἄν**: modal adv., 70
- 01 **ἀπό**: from, away from. (+ gen.), 13
- 01 **ἀρετή, ἡ**: virtue, excellence, 63
- 01 **αὐτός, -ή, -ό**: he, she, it; same; -self, 105
- 01 **γάρ**: for, (yes) for; since, because, 227
- 01 **δέ**: but, and, on the other hand, 528
- 01 **δέω**: need, lack (gen.); *mid.* ask, request;
impers. δεῖ, one ought, it is necessary, (inf.), 70
- 01 **δή**: exactly, precisely, just; accordingly, 52
- 01 **ἐκ, ἐξ**: out of, from (+ gen.), 46
- 01 **ἔχω**: have; be able; be disposed; know, 62
- 01 **ὁ, ἡ, τό**: the, 1409
- 01 **ἡμεῖς**: we, 47
- 01 **καί**: and; also, even, too; in fact, actually 707
- 01 **μέν**: on the one hand, 212
- 01 **μικρός, -ά, -όν**: small, little, 14
- 01 **οἷος, -α, -ον**: which sort, who; for example, 49
- 01 **εἶμι**: to be, exist, 296
- 01 **ὅτι**: that; because, 61
- 01 **ὅς, ἡ, ὅ**: who, which, that, 136
- 01 **οὐ-δέ**: and not, but not, nor; not even, 65
- 01 **οὐδ-εἷς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν**: no one, nothing, 51
- 01 **οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, οὐχί**: not, 148
- 01 **πλείων, πλέων (-ονος) ὁ, ἡ**: more, 10
- 01 **φύσις, -εως ἡ**: nature, 21
- 02 **ἀλλά**: but, 91
- 02 **ἄλλος, -η, -ο**: other, one...another, 39
- 02 **γίγνομαι**: come to be, become, be born, 71
- 02 **διά**: through (gen); on account of, 101
- 02 **λαμβάνω**: to receive, grasp, take, 10
- 02 **ἐπί**: upon (gen.), to (acc.), near, at (dat.); in addition, furthermore, besides, 89
- 02 **ἔτι**: still, besides, further; in addition, 26
- 02 **ἢ**: or (either...or); than, 134

- 02 ὅσος -η -ον: as many as; all who, all which 19
- 02 οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 33
- 02 οὕτως: thus, in this way, 39
- 02 φύω: grow, be by nature, be natural + inf. 12
- 02 ποιέω: to do, make; bring about, treat, 28
- 02 οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 198
- 02 τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 10
- 02 ὥσπερ: as, just as, as if, 30
- 03 ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good, brave, capable, 33
- 03 ἀμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, do wrong, 11
- 03 ἀνδρεία, ἡ: courage, bravery, manliness, 27
- 03 ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον: courageous, brave, manly, 48
- 03 δια-φέρω: differ; surpass, be superior to, 15
- 03 δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right, lawful, fair, 15
- 03 εἰ: if, whether, 50
- 03 ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 130
- 03 εὖ: well, 28
- 03 κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 28
- 03 λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest, 12
- 03 μή: not, lest, 70
- 03 ὁμοίως: in the same way; similarly, 31
- 03 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 79
- 03 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 68
- 03 σώφρων, -οντος: temperate, moderate, 26
- 04 ἀ-κόλαστος, -ον: indulgent, intemperate, 24
- 04 ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: human being, man, 16
- 04 δειλός, -ή, -όν: cowardly, timid, 16
- 04 διό: δι' ὃ, on account of which, for which reason, 24
- 04 ἔξις, -εως, ἡ: disposition, habit, state, 24
- 04 ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 21
- 04 θαρρέω: to be confident, bold, 10
- 04 κατά: down (from, to), in, according to, in respect to, corresponding to, 86
- 04 λόγος, ὁ: word, speech, account, principle, 26
- 04 οὖν: and so, then; at all events, 67
- 04 περὶ: around, about, concerning (acc/gen) 143
- 04 πρὸς: to, in relation to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 70
- 04 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 23
- 05 οἶδα: to know, 14
- 05 λέγω, ἐρέω, εἶπον: to say, call; mean, 93
- 05 ἕνεκα: for the sake of, for (+gen.), 14
- 05 ἐπεὶ: when, after; since, because, 10

- 05 κύριος, -α, -ον: having power, in power over (gen.), 10
 05 μᾶλλον: more, rather, 50
 05 πράξις, -εως, ἡ: action; transaction, 39
 05 πῶς: how in what way?, 18
 05 τίς, τί: who?, which?; why?, 29
 06 ἀρχή, ἡ: origin, source; beginning, 19
 06 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 33
 06 πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 10
 06 τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: such, this sort, 73
 06 ὑπό: by, because of, (gen.), under, 22
 06 ὑπερβολή, ἡ: excess, 35
 07 ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 11
 07 ἐλ-λείπω: to be deficient, fall short, lack, 19
 07 ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, 40
 07 θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rash; overly bold, 10
 07 μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 15
 07 ὅλως: in general; entirely, 11
 07 σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperance, prudence, 11
 07 τε: and, both, 25
 07 ὑπερ-βάλλω: to exceed, overshoot, 22
 07 ὑπο-μένω: to endure, abide, remain, 20
 07 φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 17
 08 ἔλ-λειψις, -εως, ἡ: deficiency, falling short, 30
 08 μάλιστα: most of all; most certainly, especially 22
 08 μεσότης, -της, ἡ: the middle, mean, 34
 08 πολὺς, πολλὰ, πολὺ: much, many, 25
 08 τις, τι: anyone, -thing, someone, -thing, 74
 09 γε: at least, indeed, at any rate, 18
 09 ἔργον, τό: function, task; deed, work, 11
 09 καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 33
 09 λύπη, ἡ: pain, 25
 09 λυπέω: to cause pain; *mid.* be in pain, 17
 09 πως: somehow, in some/a certain way, 13
 09 φημί: to say, claim, assert, 12
 09 φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful, dreadful 15
 09 χαίρω: to rejoice in, enjoy (dat); greet, 23
 09 ὥς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 61
 10 ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 14
 10 ὅτε: when, at some time, 15
 10 πάθος, -εος, τό: feeling, passion, 21
 11 αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: shameful, disgraceful, 19

- 11 ἀπλῶς: simply; without qualification, 11
 11 εἰς: into, to, in regard to (acc.), 12
 11 ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: pleasant; sweet, 29
 11 κακία, ἡ: vice, wickedness, cowardice, 14
 11 λυπηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, 14
 12 ἥττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 21
 12 θυμός, ὁ: anger, passion, spirit, 19
 12 φαίνω: show; *mid.* appear, seem, 32
 12 χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harsh, 12
 13 ἕαν: εἰ ἂν, if (+ subj.), 12
 14 ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, them-, 23
 14 προ-αἰρέομαι: to choose, 15
 17 ἐπαινέω: to praise, approve, commend, 11
 17 ὀργίζω: to make angry; *mid.* be angry, 10
 18 πάσχω: to suffer; allow, experience, 12
 18 προ-αἵρεσις, -εως, ἡ: choice, 22
 19 ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 13
 20 ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, extreme, 13
 20 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle (of), mean, 43
 21 αἰρέω: to seize, take; *mid.* choose, 10
 21 ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 15
 22 ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.), 11
 24 ἔνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 11
 27 ἀ-κολασία, ἡ: intemperance, licentiousness 11
 27 τυγχάνω: to chance upon, attain; happen, 13
 36 δοκέω: to seem (good); think, decide, 40
 36 ἕτερος, -α, -ον: other, different, 13
 41 ἀκούσια, ἡ: involuntary behavior, 10
 42 ἄγνοια, ἡ: ignorance, 14
 42 ἔοικα: to seem, be like, seem likely, (dat.), 18
 43 ἐκούσιος, -ον: voluntary; willing, 27
 43 τέλος, -εος, τό: end; motive, 29
 47 ἄγνοέω: be ignorant of, be in ignorance, 15
 47 βούλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 10
 55 βουλευώ: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 13
 72 θάνατος, -ον: mortal, 10
 73 κίνδυνος, ὁ: danger, risk, venture, 10

ΗΘΙΚΩΝ ΝΙΚΟΜΑΧΕΙΩΝ Β

1. Διττῆς δὴ τῆς ἀρετῆς οὐσης, τῆς μὲν διανοητικῆς τῆς
 δὲ ἡθικῆς, ἡ μὲν διανοητικὴ τὸ πλεῖον ἐκ διδασκαλίας ἔχει 15
 καὶ τὴν γένεσιν καὶ τὴν αὐξήσιν, διόπερ ἐμπειρίας δέεται
 καὶ χρόνου, ἡ δ' ἡθικὴ ἐξ ἔθους περιγίνεται, ὅθεν καὶ τοῦνομα
 ἔσχηκε μικρὸν παρεκκλῖνον ἀπὸ τοῦ ἔθους. ἐξ οὗ καὶ δῆλον
 ὅτι οὐδεμία τῶν ἡθικῶν ἀρετῶν φύσει ἡμῶν ἐγγίνεται· οὐθὲν
 γὰρ τῶν φύσει ὄντων ἄλλως ἐθίζεται, οἷον ὁ λίθος φύσει 20
 κάτω φερόμενος οὐκ ἂν ἐθισθείη ἄνω φέρεσθαι, οὐδ' ἂν μυ-
 ριάκας αὐτὸν ἐθίζει τις ἄνω ῥιπτῶν, οὐδὲ τὸ πῦρ κάτω, οὐδ'

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 5

ἄνω: up, above, 2

αὐξήσις, -εως, ἡ: increase, development, 3

γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: beginning, generation, 3

δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9

διανοητικός, -ή, -όν: intellectual, 2

διδασκαλία, ἡ: teaching, instruction, 1

διόπερ: for which very reason, 3

διττός, -ή, -όν: double, twofold; in two, 1

ἐγ-γίγνομαι: to come to be in, be inborn, 2

ἐθίζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9

ἔθος, -εος, το: habit; custom, 3

ἐμπειρία, ἡ: experience, 4

ἡθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral, 6

κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 2

λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 3

μυριάκας: ten thousand or countless times, 1

ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 6

παρεκκλίνω: deviate, turn aside, 1

περι-γίγνομαι: to be a result; prevail over, 2

πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 1

ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3

φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6

χρόνος, ὁ: time, 3

14 Διττῆς...οὐσης: gen. abs., pres. pple εἰμί

δῆ: *precisely, exactly*; intensive δῆ
 modifying Διττῆς (S2843)

τῆς μὲν (ἀρετῆς οὐσης) διανοητικῆς: *one*
(virtue being) ...; gen. abs.; a partitive
 apposition (S981) following Διττῆς
 τῆς δὲ (ἀρετῆς οὐσης) ἡθικῆς: *the other*
(virtue being) ...; see above

15 τὸ πλεῖον: *for the most part*; adverbial acc.

ἡ μὲν διανοητικὴ (ἀρετὴ): ellipsis

16 δεῖται: *needs*; pres. mid. δέω, 'lacks;' this
 verb often, as here, governs a gen. of
 separation as object: 'is lacking from...'

17 ἡ μὲν ἡθικὴ (ἀρετὴ): ellipsis

τοῦνομα: τὸ ὄνομα; acc. obj.

18 ἔσχηκε: pf. ἔχω; the subject is ἡ ἡθικὴ
 μικρὸν: *a little*; or 'somewhat,' inner acc.

παρεκκλῖνον: neut. pres. pple with ὄνομα.
 Aristotle asserts that ἡθ- in ἡθικὴ derives

from the stem ἐθ- in ἔθος

δῆλον (ἐστίν) ὅτι: (*it is*) *clear that ...*; or
 simply 'clearly,' a common impersonal
 construction with ind. disc.

19 φύσε-ι: *by nature*; dat. of respect, φύσις

ἡμῶν: *in ...*; dat. of compound verb, ἡμεῖς

οὐθὲν: variation of οὐδὲν

20 τῶν...ὄντων: *of what is ...*; 'of the things
 being,' pres. pple

οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which
 sort,' common acc. of respect

21 φερόμενος: pres. pass.; i.e. borne along;

ἂν ἐθισθείη: *would be ...*; potential opt. 3s

aor. pass. opt. ἐθίζω + pass. inf.

οὐδὲ (ἐ)ἂν... ἐθίζει τις: *not even (if) someone*
(tries to) train it; contracted ἐάν; ἂν + 3s
 pres. subj.

22 ἄνω ῥιπτῶν: *by ...*; causal pres. pple

οὐδὲ... οὐδὲ: *nor (if) ...nor (if) ...*; ellipsis

ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν ἄλλως πεφυκότων ἄλλως ἂν ἐθισθείη. οὐτ'
 ἄρα φύσει οὔτε παρὰ φύσιν ἐγγίνονται αἱ ἀρεταί, ἀλλὰ
 πεφυκόσι μὲν ἡμῖν δέξασθαι αὐτάς, τελειουμένοις δὲ διὰ τοῦ 25
 ἔθους. ἔτι ὅσα μὲν φύσει ἡμῖν παραγίνεται, τὰς δυνάμεις
 τούτων πρότερον κομιζόμεθα, ὕστερον δὲ τὰς ἐνεργείας ἀποδι-
 δομεν (ὅπερ ἐπὶ τῶν αἰσθήσεων δῆλον· οὐ γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ πολ-
 λάκις ἰδεῖν ἢ πολλάκις ἀκοῦσαι τὰς αἰσθήσεις ἐλάβομεν,
 ἀλλ' ἀνάπαλιν ἔχοντες ἐχρησάμεθα, οὐ χρησάμενοι ἔσχο- 30
 μεν)· τὰς δ' ἀρετὰς λαμβάνομεν ἐνεργήσαντες πρότερον,
 ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων τεχνῶν· ἃ γὰρ δεῖ μαθόντας
 ποιεῖν, ταῦτα ποιῶντες μαθάνομεν, οἷον οἰκοδομοῦντες οἰκο-
 δόμοι γίνονται καὶ κιθαρίζοντες κιθαρισταί· οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὰ

αἰσθήσεις, -εως, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7
 ἀκούω: to hear, listen to, 2
 ἀνά-παλιν: in the opposite way, back again, 5
 ἀπο-δίδωμι: to render, exhibit, give back, 5
 ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 6
 δέχομαι: to receive or accept, 1
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9
 δύναιμι, -εως, ἡ: ability, capacity, power, 5
 ἐγ-γίγνομαι: to come to be in, be inborn, 2
 ἐθίζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9
 ἔθος, -εος, το: habit; custom, 3
 ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
 ἐν-εργέω: to be active, actualize, operate, 5
 κιθαρίζω: to play the cithara, 2
 κιθαριστής, -ου, ὁ: cithara-player, 2

κομίζω: to carry, convey; travel, journey, 2
 μαθάνω: to learn, understand, 3
 οἰκο-δομέω: to build, build a house, 2
 οἰκό-δομος, ὁ: builder, 3
 ὁράω: to see, look, behold, 6
 ὅπερ, ἤπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very
 thing which, 9
 παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 1
 παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
 πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 4
 πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8
 τελειόω: to make perfect, complete, finish, 1
 ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv.* later, 5
 χράομαι: to use, employ; enjoy, (+ *dat.*), 7

23 οὐδὲν: *anything*; positive after οὐδὲ
 τῶν...πεφυκότων: *of what are by nature*;
 'having grown by nature' pf. act. pple φύω;
 pf. φύω is often translated as 'is by nature'
 ἂν ἐθισθείη: *would be...*; potential opt. 3s
 aor. pass. opt. ἐθίζω
 24 φύσει: *by nature*; *dat.* of respect, φύσις
 παρὰ...: *contrary to...*
 25 πεφυκόσι μὲν: *being natural* + *inf.*; *dat.* pl.
 pf. pple φύω with complementary aor. *inf.*
 ἡμῖν (ἐγγίγνεται): *(they come to be in) us*;
dat. of compound verb; supply main verb
 τελευτούμενοις δὲ: *and...*; *dat.* pl. pres. pass.
 pple modifying ἡμῖν
 26 ἔτι: *in addition*; common transition
 ὅσα: *as many things as...*; neut. pl. relative,

the antecedent is τούτων that follows
 ἡμῖν: *in...*; *dat.* of compound
 δυνάμεις...ἐνεργείας: i.e. the contrast
 between potentiality and actuality
 27 πρότερον...ὕστερον: *advs.*, adverbial acc.
 28 ἐπὶ: *in the case of...* + *gen.*
 δῆλον (ἐστίν): *nom. pred.*, add linking verb
 ἐκ τοῦ...ἰδεῖν...ἀκοῦσαι: *from...*; aor.
 articular *inf.* (-ing) ὁράω, ἀκούω
 30 ἔχοντες...ἔσχομεν: add αἰσθήσεις as
 object for all four verb forms; aor. ἔχω
 31 δ': *but*; in contrast to αἰσθήσεις
 καὶ ἐπὶ...: *also in the case of...*; *adv.*
 ἃ...: *what...*; 'the (things) which,' relative
 33 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'
 οὕτω δὲ καὶ: *in just this way also*

μὲν δίκαια πράττοντες δίκαιοι γινόμεθα, τὰ δὲ σώφρονα
 σώφρονες, τὰ δ' ἀνδρεία ἀνδρείοι. μαρτυρεῖ δὲ καὶ τὸ γινό-
 μενον ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν· οἱ γὰρ νομοθέται τοὺς πολίτας ἐθί-
 ζοντες ποιοῦσιν ἀγαθοὺς, καὶ τὸ μὲν βούλημα παντὸς νομο-
 θέτου τοῦτ' ἐστίν, ὅσοι δὲ μὴ εὖ αὐτὸ ποιοῦσιν ἀμαρτάνουσιν, 5
 καὶ διαφέρει τούτῳ πολιτεία πολιτείας ἀγαθὴ φαύλης. ἔτι
 ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ γίνεται πᾶσα ἀρετὴ καὶ
 φθείρεται, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τέχνη· ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ κιθαρίζειν
 καὶ οἱ ἀγαθοὶ καὶ κακοὶ γίνονται κιθαρισταί. ἀνάλογον
 δὲ καὶ οἰκοδόμοι καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ πάντες· ἐκ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ 10
 εὖ οἰκοδομεῖν ἀγαθοὶ οἰκοδόμοι ἔσονται, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ κακῶς
 κακοί. εἰ γὰρ μὴ οὕτως εἶχεν, οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει τοῦ διδάξαντος,

ἀνά-λογος, -ον: proportionate, analogous, 2
 βούλημα, -ατος τό: wish, intent, aim, 1
 διδάσκω: to teach, instruct, 1
 ἐθίζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9
 κακῶς: poorly, badly, 6
 κιθαρίζω: to play the cithara, 2
 κιθαριστής, -ου, ὁ: cithara-player, 2
 μαρτυρέω: to bear witness (+ dat.), 2

νομο-θέτης, -ου ὁ: lawgiver, 2
 οἰκο-δομέω: to build, build a house, 2
 οἰκό-δομος, ὁ: builder, 3
 πόλις, -εως ἡ: a city-state, city, 2
 πολιτεία, ἡ: constitution, government, 3
 πολίτης, ὁ: citizen, 2
 φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8
 φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

- 1 τὰ...δίκαια: *just things*; acc. pl. substantive
 τὰ δὲ σώφρονα (πράττοντες) σώφρονες
 (γινόμεθα): ellipsis, supply the verbs
 2 τὰ δ' ἀνδρεία: see above
 τὸ γινόμενον: *what happens...*; 'the thing
 coming to be'
 3 πόλειςιν: dat. pl. πόλις
 4 ποιοῦσιν: *make (x) (y)*; ποιέω governs a
 double acc. (acc. obj. and pred.)
 5 τοῦτ(ο): subject: i.e. making citizens good
 ὅσοι...ποιοῦσιν: *as many as...*; the missing
 antecedent is subject of πάσχω; μὴ rather
 than οὐ in a conditional clause (S2505)
 6 τούτῳ: *because of...*; dat. of cause
 πολιτείας...φαύλης: *from...*; gen. of
 separation after διαφέρει
 7 τῶν αὐτῶν: αὐτός in the attributive
 position (after an article) means 'the same'
 καὶ γίνεται...καὶ...: *both...and...*

- 8 καὶ: *also*
 τοῦ κιθαρίζειν: articular inf. (translate: -ing)
 9 καὶ οἱ ἀγαθοὶ...κιθαρισταί: all nom. subject
 ἀνάλογον: *by analogy*; adv.: adverbial acc.
 10 καὶ. οἰκοδόμοι...(γίνονται): add verb
 τοῦ οἰκοδομεῖν: articular inf. (-ing)
 11 ἔσονται: 3p fut. εἰμί (ἔσομαι)
 ἐκ δὲ τοῦ κακῶς (οἰκοδομεῖν) κακοί
 (ἔσονται): ellipsis, supply verbs from above
 12 εἰ...εἶχεν, ἂν ἔδει: *if it were...,...would*;
 contrary to fact (εἰ impf., ἂν + impf. ind.)
 11 οὕτως εἶχεν: *it were so*; 'were disposed
 thus,' ἔχω ('be disposed' or 'holds') + adv.
 is often translated as εἰμί + pred.; impf. ἔχω
 12 οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc., 'be no need'
 ἔδει: *there would be a need for*; + gen. of
 separation, i.e. 'there would be a lack from'
 τοῦ διδάξαντος: i.e. a teacher; aor. pple.

3 rd decl. nouns such as fem. φύσις and neuter ἔθος are common and their case endings should be reviewed and memorized.	Nom. φύσις φύσεις(ε-ες)	ἔθος	ἔθην(ε-α)
	Gen. φύσε-ως φύσε-ων	ἔθους(-εος)	ἔθων(έ-ων)
	Dat. φύσε-ι φύσε-σι	ἔθει	ἔθέσιν
	Acc. φύσιν φύσεις(ε-ες)	ἔθος	ἔθην(ε-α)

ἀλλὰ πάντες ἂν ἐγίνοντο ἀγαθοὶ ἢ κακοί. οὕτω δὴ καὶ ἐπὶ
 τῶν ἀρετῶν ἔχει· πράττοντες γὰρ τὰ ἐν τοῖς συναλλάγμασι
 τοῖς πρὸς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους γινόμεθα οἱ μὲν δίκαιοι οἱ δὲ ἄδι- 15
 κοί, πράττοντες δὲ τὰ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς καὶ ἐθιζόμενοι φοβεῖ-
 σθαι ἢ θαρρεῖν οἱ μὲν ἀνδρείοι οἱ δὲ δειλοί. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ
 τὰ περὶ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας ἔχει καὶ τὰ περὶ τὰς ὀργάς· οἱ μὲν
 γὰρ σώφρονες καὶ πρᾶοι γίνονται, οἱ δ' ἀκόλαστοι καὶ ὀρ- 20
 γίλοι, οἱ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ οὕτως ἐν αὐτοῖς ἀναστρέφεσθαι, οἱ δὲ
 ἐκ τοῦ οὕτως. καὶ ἐν δὴ λόγῳ ἐκ τῶν ὁμοίων ἐνεργειῶν αἱ
 ἕξεις γίνονται. διὸ δεῖ τὰς ἐνεργείας ποιᾶς ἀποδιδόναι·
 κατὰ γὰρ τὰς τούτων διαφορὰς ἀκολουθοῦσιν αἱ ἕξεις. οὐ
 μικρὸν οὖν διαφέρει τὸ οὕτως ἢ οὕτως εὐθὺς ἐκ νέων ἐθίζεσθαι, 24

ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 8
 ἀκολουθεῖω: to follow, 2
 ἀνα-στρέφω: to turn about; *pass.* behave, 1
 ἀπο-διδωμι: to render, exhibit, give back, 5
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5
 δια-φορά, ἡ: difference, 2
 ἐθίζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9
 εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9
 ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
 ἐν-εργέω: to be active, actualize, operate, 5

εὐθύς-εἷς, -ύ: straight; *adv.* straight away, 3
 νέος, -α, -ον: young; new; *subst.* youth, 3
 ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7
 ὀργή, ἡ: anger, 3
 ὀργίλος, -η, -ον: prone to anger, 2
 οὕτως: in just this way, just thus, so, 2
 ποιός, -ά, -όν: of such sort, of such kind, 4
 πρᾶος, -ον: gentle, mild, 3
 συν-άλλαγμα, -ατος, τό: dealings,
 transactions, 1

13 ἂν ἐγίνοντο: *would...*; ἂν + impf. subj. in
 the same contrary to fact condition
 οὕτω...ἔχει: *is so*; 'is disposed thus,'
 ἔχω + *adv.* is translated as εἰμί + *pred.*
 δὴ: *just*; intensive modifying οὕτω
 καὶ: *also*; *adv.*
 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

14 τὰ...: *things...*

15 τοῖς...ἀνθρώπους: *toward...*;
 prepositional phrase in attributive position
 modifying *dat. pl.* συναλλάγμασι
 οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ: *some...others...*; partitive
 distribution in apposition to 1p subject

16 τὰ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς...: *things in the presence
 of dangers*; 'in dangerous (situations)'

17 οἱ μὲν (γινόμεθα)...οἱ δὲ: *some...others*;
 see note above and add verb

ὁμοίως...ἔχει: ἔχω + *adv.*, see l. 13 note
 καὶ τὰ περὶ...τὰ περὶ...: *both matters...and
 matters...*; 3p subj. of 3s verb
 ὀργάς: *bouts of anger*

20 οἱ μὲν (γινόνται)...οἱ δὲ (γινόνται): *some
 (become such)...others (become such)*

ἐκ...ἀναστρέφεσθαι: *articular inf. (-ing)*

21 ἐκ τοῦ οὕτως (ἀναστρέφεσθαι): *add inf.*
 οὕτως...οὕτως: *in just this way...in just
 that way*; deitic iota adds emphasis

ἐν...λόγῳ: *in...*; i.e. in short, *dat. sg.* εἷς
 αἱ ἕξεις: *habits*

ὁμοίων: i.e. The habits arise from
 corresponding activities.

22 δεῖ: *it is...*; impersonal δέω

23 κατὰ...: *according to...*;

τούτων: *between these*; i.e. between the
 ἐνεργεῖαι

οὐ μικρὸν... διαφέρει: *it makes no small
 difference*; i.e. a big difference; an inner
acc.

τὸ...ἐθίζεσθαι: *articular inf. (translate: -ing)*
 and true subject of the sentence

24 οὕτως...οὕτως: *in this way or that*
 ἐκ νέων: *from youths*; i.e. from young age

ἀλλὰ πάμπολου, μᾶλλον δὲ τὸ πᾶν.

25

2. Ἐπεὶ οὖν ἡ παρούσα πραγματεία οὐ θεωρίας ἕνεκά
 ἐστὶν ὥσπερ αἱ ἄλλαι (οὐ γὰρ ἵνα εἰδῶμεν τί ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετὴ
 σκεπτόμεθα, ἀλλ' ἵν' ἀγαθοὶ γενώμεθα, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲν ἂν ᾔην
 ὄφελος αὐτῆς), ἀναγκαῖον ἐπισκέψασθαι τὰ περὶ τὰς
 πράξεις, πῶς πρακτέον αὐτάς· αὗται γάρ εἰσι κύριαι καὶ 30
 τοῦ ποιᾶς γενέσθαι τὰς ἕξεις, καθάπερ εἰρήκαμεν. τὸ μὲν οὖν
 κατὰ τὸν ὀρθὸν λόγον πράττειν κοινὸν καὶ ὑποκείσθω—ῥηθή-
 σεται δ' ὕστερον περὶ αὐτοῦ, καὶ τί ἐστὶν ὁ ὀρθὸς λόγος,
 καὶ πῶς ἔχει πρὸς τὰς ἄλλας ἀρετάς. ἐκείνο δὲ προδιο-

ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 3
 ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
 ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine in addition, 1
 θεωρία, ἡ: speculation, contemplation, 1
 ἵνα: in order that, so that (subj.); where, 3
 καθ-άπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6
 κοινός, -ή, -όν: common(place); public, 7
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6
 ὄφελος, ὁ: help, use, benefit, 1

25 πάμπολου: *a very great (difference)*; inner
 acc. parallel to μικρόν

τὸ πᾶν: *all (the difference)*; inner acc.

26 παρούσα: *present*; pres. pple.
 πραγματεία: i.e. this philosophical inquiry
 ἕνεκα: a preposition with preceding gen.

27 ἵνα εἰδῶμεν: *so that...may...*; purpose
 clause with 1p aor. subj. ὁράω
 τί...ἡ ἀρετή: ind. question governed by
 εἰδῶμεν, not σκεπτόμεθα

28 ἵνα)...γενώμεθα: *so that...may...*;
 purpose clause with 1p aor. subj.
 ἐπεὶ: *since...*; causal
 ἂν ᾔην: *would...*; ἂν + impf. indicative εἰμί
 expresses unreal potential (contrary to fact)

29 ἀναγκαῖον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; impersonal
 τὰ περὶ...πράξεις: *matters regarding actions*
 30 πρακτέον (ἐστίν) αὐτάς: *(we) must*
accomplish them; '(it is) to be accomplished
 (by us)' impersonal verbal adj. (τέον) + εἰμί
 expressing necessity, often translated
 actively; αὐτάς is the acc. obj. (S2152)

πάμ-πολυς, -πόλλη, -πολυ: *very much*, 1
 πάρ-εimi: *to be near, be present, be at hand*, 2
 ποίος, -ός, -όν: *of such sort, of such kind*, 4
 πραγματεία, ἡ: *study, inquiry, treatise*, 3
 πρακτέος, -ον: *to be done, accomplished*, 1
 προ-διομολογέω: *to agree to allow before*, 1
 σκέπτομαι: *to consider, examine, look at*, 1
 ὑπο-κειμαι: *to be laid down, be assumed*, 2
 ὕστερος, -α, -ον: *later, last*; *adv. later*, 5

αὗται: fem. pl. οὗτος, referring to πράξεις
 εἰσι: 3s pres. εἰμί

κύριαι: *authoritative over, having authority*
or power over + gen.

31 τοῦ...γενέσθαι: *of...becoming...*; articular
 inf. in gen. with acc. subj. and pred.

εἰρήκαμεν: 1p pf. λέγω; see 1103b20-21

τὸ...πράττειν (ἐστίν) κοινόν: *to act...(is)*
 ...; this articular inf. is subject; Aristotle is
 setting up τὸ...πράττειν as a common rule

32 ὑποκείσθω: *let...be assumed*; 'let...be set
 down,' 3s pres. mid. imperative; Aristotle
 will assume this principle for the discussion
 ῥηθήσεται: *it will...*; fut. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)
 αὐτοῦ refers to τὸ πράττειν above

33 ὕστερον: *adv. acc.*

καὶ...καὶ...: *both...and...*; the two ind.
 questions are in apposition to περὶ αὐτοῦ
 ἔχω: *it is; 'is disposed' or 'holds' + adv.*
 πρὸς: *in regard to...*

34 προδιομολογείσθω: *let...*; another 3s pres.
 mid. imperative

μολογείσθω, ὅτι πᾶς ὁ περὶ τῶν πρακτῶν λόγος τύπῳ
καὶ οὐκ ἀκριβῶς ὀφείλει λέγεσθαι, ὥσπερ καὶ κατ' ἀρχὰς
εἵπομεν ὅτι κατὰ τὴν ὕλην οἱ λόγοι ἀπαιτητέοι· τὰ δ' ἐν
ταῖς πράξεσι καὶ τὰ συμφέροντα οὐδὲν ἐσθηκὸς ἔχει, ὥσ-
περ οὐδὲ τὰ ὑγιεινά. τοιούτου δ' ὄντος τοῦ καθόλου λόγου, 5
ἔτι μᾶλλον ὁ περὶ τῶν καθ' ἕκαστα λόγος οὐκ ἔχει τὰκρι-
βές· οὔτε γὰρ ὑπὸ τέχνην οὔθ' ὑπὸ παραγγελίαν οὐδεμίαν
πίπτει, δεῖ δ' αὐτοὺς αἰετοὺς πράττοντας τὰ πρὸς τὸν και-
ρὸν σκοπεῖν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἱατρικῆς ἔχει καὶ τῆς
κυβερνητικῆς. ἀλλὰ καίπερ ὄντος τοιούτου τοῦ παρόντος 10
λόγου πειρατέον βοηθεῖν. πρῶτον οὖν τοῦτο θεωρητέον, ὅτι
τὰ τοιαῦτα πέφυκεν ὑπ' ἐνδείας καὶ ὑπερβολῆς φθείρ-

ἀεὶ: always, forever, in every case, 6
ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 4
ἀκριβῶς: exactly, accurately, precisely, 1
ἀπαιτητέος, -ον: to be demanded/required, 1
βοηθέω: to help, come to aid, assist, 1
ἐν-δεῖα, ἡ: lack, want, 3
θεωρητέος, -ον: to be considered/looked at, 1
ἱατρική, ἡ: the art of medicine, 2
ἵστημι: to make stand, set; stand, stop, 1
καθ-όλου: on the whole, in general, 4
καί-περ: although, 2
καιρός, ὁ: (right) moment, occasion, time, 3
κυβερνητική, ἡ: navigation, art of steering, 2
ὀφείλω: to owe, ought + inf., 1

1 ὅτι: (namely) that; in apposition to ἐκεῖνο
τύπῳ: in..., dat. of manner
2 κατ' ἀρχὰς: in..., in N.E. I.3
3 εἵπομεν: aor. λέγω
ἀπαιτητέοι (εἶσιν): must be...; 'are) to be
required (by us)' verbal adj. (τέος) +
missing εἰμί expressing necessity
τὰ...: matters regarding...; πράξεις here is
synonymous with πρακτὰ above
4 τὰ συμφέροντα: what is expedient; 'things
being expedient,' the second nom. subj.
οὐδὲν ἐσθηκός: nothing fixed; acc. obj.;
neut. acc. sg. pf. pple ἵστημι
5 οὐδὲ: also not; adv., equiv. to καὶ οὐ
τὰ ὑγιεινά: matters of...
τοιούτου...λόγου: if...; i.e. ὁ περὶ τῶν
πρακτῶν λόγος above is not exact; gen.

παρ-αγγελία, ἡ: formal instruction, order, 1
πάρ-εμι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 2
πειρατέος, -α, -ον: to be attempted, 2
πίπτω: to fall, 1
πρακτά, τά: things to be done; matters of
moral actions, 4
σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5
συμ-φέρων, -οντος: expedient, useful, 4
συμ-φέρω: gather, be useful, be expedient, 1
τύπος, ὁ: mark, outline; sketch, 5
ὑγιεινός, -ή, -όν: sound, healthy, wholesome, 2
ὕλη, ἡ: subject matter, matter; woods, 2
φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

abs. conditional in sense; pres. pple of εἰμί
6 ἔτι μᾶλλον: still more...
τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα: the particulars; 'those
each by each,' in contrast to καθ-όλου
7 τ(ὸ) ἀκριβές: accuracy; acc. sg. substantive
8 ὑπὸ: under...; i.e. under the power of...
9 αὐτοὺς: themselves; intensive pronoun
10 τοὺς πράττοντας: those...; acc. subj.
11 τὰ πρὸς...: matters regarding...
12 καὶ ἐπὶ...: all in the case of...
13 καίπερ...λόγου: concessive gen. abs.
14 πειρατέον (ἐστί): we must...; 'it is (to
be)...(by us)' impersonal verbal adj.
15 θεωρητέον (ἐστί): neuter τοῦτο is subject
16 ὅτι: (namely) that...; in apposition to τοῦτο
17 πέφυκεν: are disposed by nature + inf.;
'have grown by nature,' pf. with 3p subject

εσθαι, (δεῖ γὰρ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἀφανῶν τοῖς φανεροῖς μαρτυρίοις
 χρῆσθαι) ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῆς ἰσχύος καὶ τῆς ὑγείας ὁρῶμεν·
 τὰ τε γὰρ ὑπερβάλλοντα γυμνάσια καὶ τὰ ἐλλείποντα 15
 φθείρει τὴν ἰσχύν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὰ ποτὰ καὶ τὰ σιτία
 πλείω καὶ ἐλάττω γινόμενα φθείρει τὴν ὑγίειαν, τὰ δὲ
 σύμμετρα καὶ ποιεῖ καὶ αὖξει καὶ σῶζει. οὕτως οὖν καὶ
 ἐπὶ σωφροσύνης καὶ ἀνδρείας ἔχει καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀρετῶν.
 ὃ τε γὰρ πάντα φεύγων καὶ φοβούμενος καὶ μηδὲν ὑπο- 20
 μένων δειλὸς γίνεται, ὃ τε μηδὲν ὅλως φοβούμενος ἀλλὰ
 πρὸς πάντα βαδίζων θρασὺς· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ὁ μὲν πά-
 σης ἡδονῆς ἀπολαύων καὶ μηδεμιᾶς ἀπεχόμενος ἀκόλα-
 στος, ὁ δὲ πᾶσαν φεύγων, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄγροικοι, ἀναίσθητός 24

ἄγροικος, -ον: unrefined, rustic, 2
 ἀν-αισθητός, -όν: ascetic; insensible, 5
 ἀπολαύω: have benefit/enjoyment of (gen), 1
 αὖξάνω (αὖξω): to increase, enrich, 3
 ἀ-φανής, -ές: unseen, invisible, unclear, 1
 βαδίζω: to walk, go, 1
 γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercise; gymnasium, 3
 ἐλάττω, -ον: smaller, fewer, 5
 ἰσχύς, ἰσχύος ὁ: strength, power, force, 3
 μαρτυρίον, τό: testimony, evidence, 1

14 ἐπὶ: *in the case of...*

15 τὰ...ἐλλείποντα (γυμνάσια): add noun
 πλείω...ἐλάττω: πλείο(ν)α...ἐλάττο(ν)α
 neuter pl. predicates of ppl. γινόμενα

τὰ σύμμετρα: i.e. τὰ ποτὰ and τὰ σιτία

18 καὶ ποιεῖ... σῶζει: add τὴν ὑγίειαν as obj.
 the three καὶ join the three verbs (the first
 may be left untranslated)

οὕτως...ἔχει: *it is so*; ἔχω ('be disposed') +
 adv. is often translated as *εἰμί* + pred.

19 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

τῶν ἄλλων ἀρετῶν: also object of ἐπὶ

20 ὁ...φεύγων: *the one avoiding...*; the article
 ὁ receives its acute accent from τε

μηδὲν ὑπομένων: *not at all standing their*

ὁράω: to see, look, behold, 6

ποτόν, τό: a drink, 1

σιτίον, τό: grain, bread; provisions, 2

σύμ-μετρος, -ον: proportionate, measured, 1

σῶζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4

ὑγεία, ἡ: health, 4

ὑπὲρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); beyond, 5

φανερὸς, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 5

φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7

ground; 'enduring nothing,' ὑπομένω can
 mean 'stand one's ground' or 'abide or
 endure'; μὴ is used instead of οὐ throughout
 because the pples are conditional (S2728)

21 ὁ τε...φοβούμενος: *and the one...*; see note
 1. 20; τε answers the earlier τε: both...and...

22 θρασὺς (γίνεται): nom. pred., add verb
 καὶ: *also*; adv.

23 μηδεμιᾶς (ἡδονῆς): *from...*; gen. of
 separation with mid. ppl. ἀπ-έχω; μὴ is
 used because the participle is conditional
 (S2728)

ἀκόλαστος (γίνεται): nom. pred., add verb

24 πᾶσαν (ἡδονήν): acc. obj.

ἀναίσθητός τις (γίνεται): nom. pred.

ὑπερ-βάλλω: to exceed,

ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: excess

μεσότης, -της, ἡ: mean

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle (of), mean

ἐλ-λείπω: to be deficient

ἐλ-λειψις, -εως, ἡ: deficiency

τις· φθείρεται δὴ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἡ ἀνδρεία ὑπὸ τῆς 25
 ὑπερβολῆς καὶ τῆς ἐλλείψεως, ὑπὸ δὲ τῆς μεσότητος σώ-
 ζεται. ἀλλ' οὐ μόνον αἱ γενέσεις καὶ αὐξήσεις καὶ αἱ
 φθοραὶ ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν αὐτῶν γίνονται, ἀλλὰ
 καὶ αἱ ἐνέργειαι ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἔσονται· καὶ γὰρ ἐπὶ τῶν
 ἄλλων τῶν φανερωτέρων οὕτως ἔχει, οἷον ἐπὶ τῆς ἰσχύος· 30
 γίνεται γὰρ ἐκ τοῦ πολλὴν τροφήν λαμβάνειν καὶ πολ-
 λούς πόνους ὑπομένειν, καὶ μάλιστα ἂν δύναιτ' αὐτὰ ποιεῖν
 ὁ ἰσχυρός. οὕτω δ' ἔχει καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀρετῶν· ἕκ τε γὰρ
 τοῦ ἀπέχεσθαι τῶν ἡδονῶν γινόμεθα σώφρονες, καὶ γενό-
 μενοι μάλιστα δυνάμεθα ἀπέχεσθαι αὐτῶν· ὁμοίως δὲ 35

αὐξήσις, -εως, ἡ: increase, development, 3
 γενέσις, -εως, ἡ: beginning, generation, 3
 δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 9
 ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
 ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 1
 ἰσχύς, ἰσχύος ὁ: strength, power, force, 3
 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4

25 φθείρεται: pass. governs a 3p subject
 δὴ: *accordingly, then*; inferential δὴ
 (ἡ) σωφροσύνη: the article ἡ is missing
 through crasis with the preceding δὴ (S62)
 27 οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only...but also...*
 τῶν αὐτῶν: αὐτός in the attributive
 position (after an article) means 'the same'
 28 τοῖς αὐτοῖς: see above
 ἔσονται: 3p fut. εἰμί
 29 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*; καὶ is adverbial
 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*
 30 φανερωτέρων: comparative degree
 οὕτως ἔχει: *it is so*; ἔχω + adv. is often

πόνος, ὁ: work, toil, 2
 σώζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4
 τροφή, ἡ: food; rearing, upbringing, 3
 φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 5
 φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8
 φθορά, ἡ: disaster, destruction, 2

translated as εἰμί + pred.
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 31 τοῦ...λαμβάνειν...ὑπομένειν: articular inf.
 (-ing); ὑπομένειν here meaning 'abiding' or
 'enduring' with an acc. obj.
 32 ἂν δύναιτ(ο): *would...*; potential opt.
 αὐτὰ: *them*; i.e. λαμβάνειν...ὑπομένειν
 33 ὁ ἰσχυρός: *a strong man*
 οὕτω δ' ἔχει: *it...*; impersonal, see above
 34 ἐκ τοῦ ἀπέχεσθαι: articular inf. (-ing)
 τῶν ἡδονῶν: *from...*; gen. of separation
 αὐτῶν: *them*; separation i.e. τῶν ἡδονῶν

καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς ἀνδρείας· ἐθιζόμενοι γὰρ καταφρονεῖν τῶν φοβερῶν καὶ ὑπομένειν αὐτὰ γινόμεθα ἀνδρεῖοι, καὶ γενόμενοι μάλιστα δυνησόμεθα ὑπομένειν τὰ φοβερά. 3. Σημεῖον δὲ δεῖ ποιεῖσθαι τῶν ἔξεων τὴν ἐπιγινομένην ἡδονὴν ἢ λύπην τοῖς ἔργοις· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἀπεχόμενος τῶν σωματικῶν ἡδονῶν καὶ αὐτῷ τούτῳ χαίρων σώφρων, ὁ δ' ἀχθόμενος ἀκόλαστος, καὶ ὁ μὲν ὑπομένων τὰ δεινὰ καὶ χαίρων ἢ μὴ λυπούμενός γε ἀνδρεῖος, ὁ δὲ λυπούμενος δειλός. περὶ ἡδονὰς γὰρ καὶ λύπας ἐστὶν ἡ ἡθικὴ ἀρετὴ· διὰ μὲν γὰρ τὴν ἡδονὴν τὰ φαῦλα πράττομεν, διὰ δὲ τὴν λύπην τῶν 10 καλῶν ἀπεχόμεθα. διὸ δεῖ ἡχθαί πως εὐθὺς ἐκ νέων, ὥς ὁ Πλάτων φησὶν, ὥστε χαίρειν τε καὶ λυπεῖσθαι οἷς δεῖ·

ἄγω: to conduct, do; lead, bring, 3

ἄχθομαι: to be annoyed, vexed, 1

δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5

δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 9

ἐθίζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9

ἐπι-γίγνομαι: to come to be afterwards, 1

εὐθύς -εῖα, -ύ: straight; *adv.* straight away, 3

ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral, 6

1 καὶ: *also*

ἐπὶ: *in the case of...*

καταφρονεῖν...ὑπομένειν: complementary infs. following ἐθιζόμενοι; ὑπομένω again means 'to abide' or 'to endure'

τῶν φοβερῶν: *fearful things*; a substantive

3 Σημεῖον...τῶν ἔξεων: *an indication of the dispositions*; i.e. an indication of the types of dispositions; acc. obj. of ποιεῖσθαι

4 τὴν...λύπην: acc. subject of ποιεῖσθαι

5 τοῖς ἔργοις: (*after*) *our actions*; dat. of compound verb, ἐπιγινομένην

ὁ μὲν...ἀπεχόμενος: *the one...*

τῶν...ἡδονῶν: *from...*; gen. of separation

6 αὐτῷ τούτῳ: *this itself*; dat. obj. of the pres. pple χαίρων

σώφρων (γίνεται): nom. pred., add verb

7 ἀκόλαστος (γίνεται): see above

ὁ μὲν ὑπομένων: *the one...*; see line 1

τὰ δεινὰ: *the dangers*; 'the terribles'

κατα-φρονέω: to think down upon, despise, 1

νέος, -α, -ον: young; new; *subst.* youth, 3

Πλάτων, ὁ: Plato, 1

σημεῖον, τό: sign, indication, 1

σωματικός, -ή, -όν, τό: bodily, of the body, 4

φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8

ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

8 μὴ λυπούμενος γε: *at least not...*; γε is restrictive; μὴ instead of οὐ because the participle is conditional (S2505)

ἀνδρεῖος (γίνεται): nom. pred., add verb

δειλός (γίνεται): nom. pred., add verb

10 τὰ φαῦλα: *base actions*

τῶν καλῶν: gen. separation

11 ἡχθαί: (*that these activities*) *be done*; or 'it be conducted' inf. disc. with aor. pass. inf.

ἄγω; supply an acc. subject

ἐκ νέων: *from youths*; i.e. from young age, see also II.1 (1103b23-25) above

ὥς...: *as...*; parenthetical. 3s pres. φημί

12 ὥστε: *so as to...*; + inf., result clause

λυπεῖσθαι: pass. inf.

οἷς δεῖ (χαίρειν τε καὶ λυπεῖσθαι): *by the things which we ought*; 'by which it is necessary' relative clause with dat. pl. of means

ἡ γὰρ ὀρθὴ παιδεία αὕτη ἐστίν. ἔτι δ' εἰ αἱ ἀρεταί εἰσι περὶ
 πράξεις καὶ πάθη, παντὶ δὲ πάθει καὶ πάσῃ πράξει ἔπε- 15
 ται ἡδονὴ καὶ λύπη, καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἂν εἴη ἡ ἀρετὴ περὶ
 ἡδονὰς καὶ λύπας. μηνύουσι δὲ καὶ αἱ κολάσεις γινόμε-
 ναι διὰ τούτων· ἱατρεῖαι γάρ τινές εἰσιν, αἱ δὲ ἱατρεῖαι
 διὰ τῶν ἐναντίων πεφύκασιν γίνεσθαι. ἔτι, ὥς καὶ πρῶην
 εἵπομεν, πᾶσα ψυχῆς ἕξις, ὑφ' οἷων πέφυκε γίνεσθαι
 χείρων καὶ βελτίων, πρὸς ταῦτα καὶ περὶ ταῦτα τὴν φύ- 20
 σιν ἔχει· δι' ἡδονὰς δὲ καὶ λύπας φαῦλοι γίνονται, τῷ
 διώκειν ταύτας καὶ φεύγειν, ἣ ἂς μὴ δεῖ ἢ ὅτε οὐ δεῖ ἢ
 ὥς οὐ δεῖ ἢ ὁσαχῶς ἄλλως ὑπὸ τοῦ λόγου διορίζεται τὰ
 τοιαῦτα. διὸ καὶ ὀρίζονται τὰς ἀρετὰς ἀπαθείας τινὰς 24

ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 5
 ἀ-παθεία, ἡ: a lack of feeling or sensation, 1
 βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 3
 δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, determine, 6
 διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 1
 ἔπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 3
 ἱατρεῖα, ἡ: treatment, medical treatment, 2
 κολάσις, -εως, ὁ: punishment, corrections, 2
 μηνύω: to reveal, make known, inform, 1

13 αὕτη: *this*; nom. subject
 ἔτι δ': *and in addition*; in transition
 εἰσι περὶ...: *are concerned with...*; 'are
 regarding...' 3p pres. εἰμί
 πάθη: πάθη (πάθέ-α), 'emotions' or
 'passions,' is neut. pl.
 14 παντὶ...πράξει: dat. obj. of ἔπεται, which
 governs a 3p subject
 15 ἂν εἴη...περὶ: *would be concerned with*;
 'would be regarding...' 3s pres. potential
 opt. εἰμί
 16 καὶ: *also*; adv.
 γινόμεναι: *that (they) come to be*; ind. disc.
 with nom. pl. pple governed by μηνύουσι;
 the missing acc. refers to κολάσεις
 16 διὰ τούτων: i.e. pleasure and pains
 17 ἱατρεῖαι τινές: *certain (types of) treatment*;
 nom. pred.
 εἰσιν: assume αἱ κολάσεις as subject
 18 πεφύκασιν: *are naturally disposed to*; + inf.
 'have grown by nature,' 3p pf. φύω
 ὥς...: *as...*; parenthetical, 1p aor. λέγω

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6
 ὀρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 6
 ὁσαχῶς: in how many ways, as many ways, 1
 παιδεία, ἡ: education, culture, learning, 1
 πρῶην: earlier; early in the day, 1
 φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8
 χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 4
 ψυχή, ἡ: soul, spirit; breath, life, 4

καὶ: adv.
 19 ὑ(πὸ) οἷων...: *by which...*; relative clause,
 the antecedent is ταῦτα that follows
 πέφυκε: see note for l. 18; 3s pf. φύω;
 ἡ ἕξις is the subject
 20 πρὸς...περὶ...: *in relation to...concerning*
 21 τῷ...φεύγειν: *by...*; articular infs. (-ing)
 and dat. of means
 22 ἢ...ἢ...ἢ...ἢ...: *either...or...or...or...*; a
 series of clauses that assumes the preceding
 articular infinitive τῷ...φεύγειν
 δεῖ: *they ought*; 'it is necessary (for them)'
 23 ὥς: *how...*
 ὁσαχῶς ἄλλως: *in as many other (wrong)*
ways...; introducing the last clause
 23 ὑπὸ τοῦ λόγου: *by an account*
 διορίζεται: pres. pass. with neut. pl. subject
 24 ὀρίζονται: *they define (x) as (y)*; 3p pres.
 mid. with a double acc. (obj. and pred.)
 ἀπαθείας...ἡμερίας: *as...*; acc. predicate
 τινὰς: *a certain (type of)*

καὶ ἡρεμίας· οὐκ εὖ δέ, ὅτι ἀπλῶς λέγουσιν, ἀλλ' οὐχ 25
 ὡς δεῖ καὶ ὡς οὐ δεῖ καὶ ὅτε, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα προστίθεται.
 ὑπόκειται ἄρα ἡ ἀρετὴ εἶναι ἡ τοιαύτη περὶ ἡδονὰς καὶ
 λύπας τῶν βελτίστων πρακτικῇ, ἡ δὲ κακία τοῦναντίον.
 γένοιτο δ' ἂν ἡμῶν καὶ ἐκ τούτων φανερόν ὅτι περὶ τῶν
 αὐτῶν. τριῶν γὰρ ὄντων τῶν εἰς τὰς αἰρέσεις καὶ τριῶν 30
 τῶν εἰς τὰς φυγὰς, καλοῦ συμφέροντος ἡδέος, καὶ [τριῶν]
 τῶν ἐναντίων, αἰσχροῦ βλαβεροῦ λυπηροῦ, περὶ ταῦτα
 μὲν πάντα ὁ ἀγαθὸς κατορθωτικός ἐστιν ὁ δὲ κακὸς ἀμαρ-
 τητικός, μάλιστα δὲ περὶ τὴν ἡδονήν· κοινὴ τε γὰρ αὕτη
 τοῖς ζῴοις, καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς ὑπὸ τὴν αἵρεσιν παρακολουθεῖ· 35

αἵρεσις, -εως, ἡ: choice; taking, 2

ἀμαρτητικός, ἡ, -όν: prone to make a mistake, 1

ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 6

βέλτιστος, -η, -ον: best, 1

βλαβερὸς, -ά, -όν: harmful, 1

ζῶον, τό: animal, 7

ἡρέμια, ἡ: tranquility, rest, 1

κατ-ορθωτικός, -ή, -όν: prone to succeed, 1

25 οὐκ εὖ δέ (ὀρίζονται): *but (they define them) not well*; supply verb

ὅτι: *because*

ἀλλ(α) οὐχ...προστίθεται: *but...are not added*; in contrast to ἀπλῶς λέγουσιν

26 ὡς δεῖ...ὅτε (δεῖ ἢ οὐ δεῖ)...ὅσα ἄλλα: all four in the series are the subject of 3s verb; see II. 22-3 above for translation

ὅσα ἄλλα: *how many other things*

27 εἶναι: inf. εἶμι governs πρακτικῇ as a pred.

ἡ ἀρετὴ...ἡ τοιαύτη: *this sort of virtue*; i.e. moral virtue; nom. subj.; τοιαύτη modifies ἀρετὴ

28 πρακτικῇ: *able to effect* + objective gen.

ἡ κακία: *vice*; ellipsis: assume the verb from above

τὸ (ἐ)ναντίον: *the contrary*; crasis

29 γένοιτο...αὐτῶν: *and from the following things also it might be clear that (virtue and vice are) concerning the same things*; i.e. concerning pleasure and pain; aor. potential opt.; add a subject and verb after ὅτι

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common(place); public, 7

παρ-ακολουθεῖν: follow along, accompany, 2

πρακτικός, -ή, -όν: effective, able to effect, 2

προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, 2

συμ-φέρων, -οντος: expedient, useful, 4

τρεῖς, τρία: three, 4

ὑπο-κείμαι: to be laid down, be assumed, 2

φανερὸς, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 5

φυγὴ, ἡ: avoidance; flight, escape, 2

30 τριῶν...αἰρέσεις: gen. abs. with pres. pple εἶμι

εἰς: *in regard to...*

τριῶν (ὄντων)...φυγὰς: gen. abs., add pple

31 καλοῦ συμφέροντος ἡδέος: (*namely*) *the noble, the expedient, (and) the pleasant*;

gen. in apposition to τριῶν εἰς τὰ αἰρέσεις

32 αἰσχροῦ βλαβεροῦ λυπηροῦ: *the...the... (and) the...*; in apposition to τῶν ἐναντίων

33 ὁ ἀγαθός: *the good (man)*

πεπόνθατε: *experience*; perfect πάσχω

ὁ κακός (ἐστίν): *the bad (man)*

34 μάλιστα: *especially*; 'very greatly'

αὕτη (ἐστίν): *this (is)...*; add linking verb;

αὕτη refers to ἡδονή

35 τοῖς ζῴοις: *for...*; dat. of interest

πᾶσι: *alongside all things*; neut. dat. pl. of compound verb, πᾶς

ὑπὸ τὴν αἵρεσιν: *under the power of...*; prepositional phrase in attributive position

modifying πᾶσι

καὶ γὰρ τὸ καλὸν καὶ τὸ συμφέρον ἡδὺ φαίνεται. ἔτι
 δ' ἐκ νηπίου πᾶσιν ἡμῖν συντέθραπται· διὸ χαλεπὸν ἀπο-
 τρίβασθαι τοῦτο τὸ πάθος ἐγκεχρωσμένον τῷ βίῳ. κα-
 νονίζομεν δὲ καὶ τὰς πράξεις, οἳ μὲν μᾶλλον οἳ δ' ἦττον,
 ἡδονῇ καὶ λύπῃ. διὰ τοῦτ' οὖν ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι περὶ ταῦτα 5
 τὴν πᾶσαν πραγματείαν· οὐ γὰρ μικρὸν εἰς τὰς πράξεις
 εὖ ἢ κακῶς χαίρειν καὶ λυπεῖσθαι. ἔτι δὲ χαλεπώτερον
 ἡδονῇ μάχεσθαι ἢ θυμῷ, καθάπερ φησὶν Ἡράκλειτος, περὶ
 δὲ τὸ χαλεπώτερον αἰεὶ καὶ τέχνη γίνεται καὶ ἀρετῇ·
 καὶ γὰρ τὸ εὖ βέλτιον ἐν τούτῳ. ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο περὶ 10
 ἡδονὰς καὶ λύπας πᾶσα ἡ πραγματεία καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ καὶ
 τῇ πολιτικῇ· ὁ μὲν γὰρ εὖ τούτοις χρώμενος ἀγαθὸς ἔσται,

αἰεῖ: always, forever, in every case, 6
 ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 3
 ἀπο-τρίβω: to wear out, rub away, 1
 βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 3
 βίος, ὁ: life, 5
 ἐγ-χρώζομαι: to be engrained, 1
 Ἡράκλειτος, ὁ: Heraclitus, 1
 καθ-άπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6
 κακῶς: poorly, badly, 6

κανονίζω: to regulate; measure, 1
 μάχομαι: to fight, 3
 νήπιος, ὁ: infant, baby, 1
 πολιτικῇ, ἡ: politics, art of politics, 1
 πραγματεία, ἡ: study, inquiry, treatise, 3
 συμ-φέρων, -οντος: expedient, useful, 4
 συν-τρέφω: to nurture, feed, 1
 χρᾶσθαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7
 ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

- 1 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact...*; explaining μάλιστα
 δὲ περὶ τὴν ἡδονὴν in line 34 above
 τὸ καλὸν καὶ τὸ συμφέρον: *the noble and
 the expedient*; substantives with 3s verb and
 pred.
 2 πᾶσιν ἡμῖν: *by...*; dat. pl. of agent
 συντέθραπται: 3s pf. συν-τρέφω; the
 understood subject is ἡδονή or ἡδύ
 χαλεπὸν (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; + inf., a common
 impersonal construction; supply the verb
 3 ἐγκεχρωσμένον: pf. pass. pple
 τῷ βίῳ: *in...*; dat. of compound verb
 4 οἳ μὲν...οἳ δ': *some (of us)...others (of us)*;
 partitive apposition with a 1p subject;
 assume the verb
 5 ἡδονῇ καὶ λύπῃ: *with...*; dat. of means
 ἀναγκαῖον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; + inf.
 εἶναι...πραγματείαν: *that (our) entire
 study...*; ind. disc. with inf. εἶμι; πᾶς
 in the attributive position means 'entire'
 περὶ ταῦτα: i.e. pleasure and pain
 6 οὐ μικρὸν (ἐστίν): *(it is) no small thing*;

- the infs. that follow are the true subject
 εἰς: *in regard to...*; follows closely with the
 predicate οὐ μικρὸν
 7 χαίρειν: *to feel pleasure*; 'feel joy'
 χαλεπώτερον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; impersonal
 construction with a comparative adj.
 8 ἡδονῇ...θυμῷ: *with...with...*; i.e. against...;
 dat. of association common with μάχομαι
 ἢ: *than*
 φησὶν: 3s pres. φημί
 περὶ...τὸ χαλεπώτερον: *about something...*
 9 δὲ: *and*
 καὶ τέχνη...καὶ ἀρετῇ: *both art and virtue*;
 10 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact...*; explaining ll. 4-5
 τὸ εὖ: a substantive that often means 'the
 good,' 'doing well,' or 'success'
 (ἐστίν) βέλτιον: *(is)...*; βέλτιον is a neut.
 sg. comparative; supply a verb
 ἐν τούτῳ: i.e. in more difficult tasks
 (ἐστίν) περὶ: *(is) concerning...*; add verb
 11 καὶ...καὶ...: *both for...and...*; dat. interest
 ἔσται: 3s fut. εἶμι

ὁ δὲ κακῶς κακός. ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετὴ περὶ ἡδονὰς
καὶ λύπας, καὶ ὅτι ἐξ ὧν γίνεται, ὑπὸ τούτων καὶ αὖξε-
ται καὶ φθείρεται μὴ ὡσαύτως γινομένων, καὶ ὅτι ἐξ ὧν 15
ἐγένετο, περὶ ταῦτα καὶ ἐνεργεῖ, εἰρήσθω.

4. Ἀπορήσειε δ' ἂν τις πῶς λέγομεν ὅτι δεῖ τὰ μὲν
δίκαια πράττοντας δικαίους γίνεσθαι, τὰ δὲ σώφρονα
σώφρονας· εἰ γὰρ πράττουσι τὰ δίκαια καὶ σώφρονα,
ἤδη εἰσὶ δίκαιοι καὶ σώφρονες, ὥσπερ εἰ τὰ γραμματικὰ 20
καὶ τὰ μουσικά, γραμματικοὶ καὶ μουσικοί. ἢ οὐδ' ἐπὶ
τῶν τεχνῶν οὕτως ἔχει; ἐνδέχεται γὰρ γραμματικόν τι
ποιῆσαι καὶ ἀπὸ τύχης καὶ ἄλλου ὑποθεμένου. τότε οὖν
ἔσται γραμματικός, ἐὰν καὶ γραμματικόν τι ποιήσῃ καὶ 24

ἀ-πορέω: to be at a loss; be perplexed, 1

αὖξαν (αὖξω): to increase, enrich, 3

γραμματικός, -ή, -όν: grammatical, of
grammar, 3

γραμματικός, ὁ: grammarian, scholar, 2

ἐν-δέχομαι: to be possible; admit, allow, 1

ἐν-εργέω: to be active, actualize, operate, 5

ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 4

13 ὁ δὲ κακῶς (τούτοις χρώμενος): ellipsis

κακός (ἔσται): predicate; supply a verb

ὅτι...ὅτι...ὅτι...: *that...that...that...*; a
series of ind. disc. governed by εἰρήσθω;
ἡ ἀρετὴ is the subject of the 3s verbs and
the plural pronouns refer to 'actions'

14 ἐξ ὧν γίνεται: *from which (actions)...*; a
relative clause; τούτων is the antecedent
ὑπὸ τούτων: *by these (actions)*; gen. of
agent or cause

καὶ αὖζεται καὶ φθείρεται: *both... and...*;
pres. passive: supply ἡ ἀρετὴ as subject

15 μὴ ὡσαύτως γινομένων: (*if*) *not coming
to be in the same way*; a participial phrase
conditional in sense (hence μὴ, not οὐ) and
modifying τούτων; the verb φθείρεται is
the logical apodosis

16 ἐνεργεῖ: assume ἡ ἀρετὴ as subject

εἰρήσθω: *let it be said*; 3s pf. pass.

imperative λέγω (ἔρέω) governing the
preceding ὅτι clauses

17 Ἀπορήσειε δ' ἂν: *might be...*; 3s aor.
potential opt.

κακῶς: poorly, badly, 6

μουσικός, -ή, -όν: musical, of music, 1

μουσικός, ὁ: musician; educated man, 1

τότε: then, at that time, 3

τύχη, ἡ: chance, luck, fortune, 3

ὑπο-τίθμι: to set up, suppose, propose, 1

φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

ὡσ-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 2

πῶς λέγομεν: *what we mean...*; 'in what
sense we are saying,' this is a common
translation of λέγω with πῶς

τὰ...πράττοντας...γίνεσθαι: *that (those)...*
ind. disc.; τοὺς πράττοντας is acc. subj.

τὰ δίκαια: *just things*

18 τὰ δὲ σώφρονα (πράττοντας) σώφρονας
γίνεσθαι: *and that (those)...*; ind. disc. with
heavy ellipsis

20 εἰσὶ: 3p pres. εἰμί

τὰ γραμματικὰ...μουσικά: *grammar and
music*; ellipsis: supply verbs from above

21 οὐδ(έ): *not even*

ἐπὶ: *in the case of...*

22 οὕτως ἔχει: *is so*; ἔχω ('be disposed') +
adv. is often translated as εἰμί + pred.

ἐνδέχεται: *it is possible*; impersonal

23 ἄλλου ὑποθεμένου: *with another
suggesting*; gen. abs., aor. mid. pple

24 ἔσται, ἐάν...ποιήσῃ: *he will be...if he
does...*; fut. more vivid condition (ἐάν +
subj., fut.); 3s aor. subj. ποιέω, 'something
grammatical' may mean 'spell correctly'

γραμματικῶς· τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἐν αὐτῷ γραμ- 25
ματικήν. ἔτι οὐδ' ὁμοίον ἐστὶν ἐπὶ τε τῶν τεχνῶν καὶ τῶν
ἀρετῶν· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν τεχνῶν γινόμενα τὸ εὖ ἔχει
ἐν αὐτοῖς· ἀρκεῖ οὖν ταῦτά πως ἔχοντα γενέσθαι· τὰ δὲ
κατὰ τὰς ἀρετὰς γινόμενα οὐκ ἐὰν αὐτά πως ἔχη, δι-
καίως ἢ σωφρόνως πράττεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐὰν ὁ πράττων 30
πως ἔχων πράττη, πρῶτον μὲν ἐὰν εἰδῶς, ἔπειτ' ἐὰν προαι-
ρούμενος, καὶ προαιρούμενος δι' αὐτά, τὸ δὲ τρίτον ἐὰν καὶ
βεβαίως καὶ ἀμετακινήτως ἔχων πράττη. Ταῦτα δὲ πρὸς

ἀ-μετακινήτος, -ον: immovable, unmoved, 1
ἀρκέω: suffice, be enough; *pass.* be satisfied, 2
βεβαίως: steadfastly, firmly, steadily, 1
γραμματική, ἡ: grammatical art/knowledge, 1
γραμματικῶς: grammatically, 1

25 καὶ γραμματικῶς (ποιήσῃ): *and (he does it)...*; add the verb
τοῦτο: i.e. γραμματικῶς; Aristotle is explaining what he means when he uses the adverb γραμματικῶς
τὸ κατὰ...γραμματικήν: "*according to...*" the article makes the prepositional phrase that follows a substantive (S1153), in this case equivalent to the use of quotation marks in English
ἐν (ἐ)αυτῷ: *in himself*; reflexive
26 οὐδ(ἐ): *and...not*; οὐ δὲ
ὁμοίον ἐστίν: *it is...*; impersonal
ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*
27 τὰ...γινόμενα: *the things...*; i.e. the works of art
τὸ εὖ: *(their) good*; acc. obj.
ὑπὸ...: *because of...*; gen. of cause
ἐν (ἐ)αυτοῖς: reflexive
28 ἀρκεῖ: *it is enough*; impersonal
ταῦτά...γενέσθαι: *that...*; ind. disc; ταῦτα is acc. subj.
πως ἔχοντα: nom. pred.; ἔχω ('be disposed') + adv. is translated as εἰμί + pred.
τὰ...γινόμενα: *but the things...*; i.e. the

δικαίως: justly, rightly, lawfully, fairly, 3
ἔπειτα: then, next, secondly, 1
ὁμοιος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7
σωφρόνως: temperately, moderately, 1
τρίτος, -η, -ον: the third, 1

actions; neut. pl. subject of two 3s verbs
29 κατὰ: *in accordance with...*
οὐκ ἐάν...ἔχη,...πράττεται: *not if...*, a pres. general condition (ἐάν + subj., pres.) with 3s pres. subj. and pres. pass.; for πως ἔχη see above
αὐτά: reflexive pronoun with τὰ γινόμενα
30 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐὰν..πράττη: *but in fact if...*; 3s pres subj. πράττω in a pres. general condition in contrast to οὐκ ἐάν...ἔχη above; ;assume δικαίως...πράττεται as the apodosis
31 πως ἔχων: i.e. a certain state of mind
πρῶτον μὲν...ἔπειτα(α)...τὸ δὲ τρίτον: *first...then...thirdly...*; a series of protaseis elaborating the meaning of πως ἔχων
εἰδῶς: nom. sg. pf. οἶδα: translate pres.; assume πράττη as the verb
32 δι(ὰ) αὐτά: *on account of themselves*; i.e. actions for their own sake
καὶ...καὶ: *both...and...*
33 ἔχων: see note on line 28
ταῦτα: *these*; i.e. the conditions just listed
πρὸς: *in relation to...*

μὲν τὸ τὰς ἄλλας τέχνας ἔχειν οὐ συναριθμεῖται, πλὴν αὐτὸ τὸ εἰδέναι· πρὸς δὲ τὸ τὰς ἀρετὰς τὸ μὲν εἰδέναι οὐδὲν ἢ μικρὸν ἰσχύει, τὰ δ' ἄλλα οὐ μικρὸν ἀλλὰ τὸ πᾶν δύναται, ἅπερ ἐκ τοῦ πολλάκις πράττειν τὰ δίκαια καὶ σώφρονα περιγίνεται. τὰ μὲν οὖν πράγματα δίκαια καὶ σώφρονα λέγεται, ὅταν ἢ τοιαῦτα οἶα ἂν ὁ δίκαιος ἢ ὁ σώφρων πράξειεν· δίκαιος δὲ καὶ σώφρων ἐστὶν οὐχ ὁ ταῦτα πράττων, ἀλλὰ καὶ [ὁ] οὕτω πράττων ὡς οἱ δίκαιοι καὶ σώφρονες πράττουσιν. εἰ οὖν λέγεται ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ τὰ δίκαια πράττειν ὁ δίκαιος γίνεται καὶ ἐκ τοῦ τὰ σώφρονα ὁ σώφρων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ μὴ πράττειν ταῦτα οὐδεὶς ἂν οὐδὲ μελλήσειε γίνεσθαι ἀγαθός. ἀλλ' οἱ πολλοὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὐ πράττου-

δύναμαι: be able, can, be powerful/capable, 9
 ἰσχύω: to be strong, be powerful, prevail, 2
 μέλλω: be likely, intend, be about to (inf.), 2
 ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 7

περι-γίγνομαι: to be a result; prevail over, 2
 πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 6
 πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 4
 πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 7
 συν-αριθμέω: to count up, take into account, 1

- 1 τὸ...ἔχειν: articular inf. (-ing)
 συναριθμεῖται: 3s pres. pass. with neut. pl. subject
- 2 αὐτὸ: reflexive
 τὸ εἰδέναι: articular inf. (-ing), οἶδα
 πρὸς...τὸ τὰς ἀρετὰς (ἔχειν): but...; a strong contrast; supply ἔχειν to this articular inf.
 τὸ μὲν εἰδέναι: nom. subj.
 οὐδὲν ἢ μικρὸν: not at all...; adv. acc. (inner accusatives)
- 3 τὰ ἄλλα: the other things
 οὐ μικρὸν ἀλλὰ τὸ πᾶν: adv. accusatives (inner acc.) with δύναται
- 4 δύναται: are powerful; assume πρὸς τὸ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἔχειν from line 2
 ἅπερ...περιγίνεται: which very things...; relative clause: ἅπερ is the obj. of the articular inf. τὸ πράττειν
- 5 δίκαια καὶ σώφρονα: nom. pred.
 λέγεται (εἶναι): linking verb with 3p subject
- 6 ὅταν ἢ: whenever they are...; general temporal clause with 3s pres. subj. εἰμί with neut. pl. subject

- οἶα ἂν...πράξειεν: would...; relative clause with 3s potential aor. subj. πράττω
- 7 δὲ: but; adversative
- 8 οὐχ...ἀλλὰ καὶ: not the one...but in fact the one...; καὶ is adverbial
- οὕτω...ὥς: in this way...in which way...; correlatives; ὥς, 'as' or 'in which way' introduces a clause of comparison
- 9 λέγεται: it is...; impersonal construction
 ὅτι...: that...; ind. disc.
 τοῦ πράττειν: articular inf. (-ing)
- 10 ἐκ τοῦ τὰ σώφρονα (πράττειν): add inf.
 ὁ σώφρων (γίνεται): add verb
- 11 ἐκ...πράττειν ταῦτα: without doing these things; the literal translation 'from not doing these things' is awkward; μὴ is used with all infs.—except in ind. disc. (S2702)
 οὐδεὶς...οὐδὲ: no one...even; οὐδέ, 'not even' is positive after οὐδεὶς and modifies μελλήσειε
 ἂν...μελλήσειε: would...; aor. potential opt.
- 12 οἱ πολλοὶ: many people; 'the masses,' i.e. people in general

σιν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν λόγον καταφεύγοντες οἶονται φιλοσοφεῖν
καὶ οὕτως ἔσεσθαι σπουδαῖοι, ὅμοιόν τι ποιῶντες τοῖς
κάμνουσιν, οἱ τῶν ἱατρῶν ἀκούουσι μὲν ἐπιμελῶς, ποιοῦσι 15
δ' οὐδὲν τῶν προσταττομένων. ὥσπερ οὖν οὐδ' ἐκεῖνοι εὖ
ἔξουσι τὸ σῶμα οὕτω θεραπευόμενοι, οὐδ' οὗτοι τὴν ψυ-
χὴν οὕτω φιλοσοφούντες.

5. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τί ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετὴ σκεπτέον. ἐπεὶ οὖν
τὰ ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ γινόμενα τρία ἐστί, πάθη δυνάμεις ἔξεις, 20
τούτων ἂν τι εἴη ἡ ἀρετὴ. λέγω δὲ πάθη μὲν ἐπιθυμίας
ὀργὴν φόβον θάρσος φθόνον χαρὰν φιλίαν μῖσος πόθον
ζῆλον ἔλεον, ὅλως οἷς ἔπεται ἡδονὴ ἢ λύπη· δυνάμεις
δὲ καθ' ἃς παθητικοὶ τούτων λεγόμεθα, οἷον καθ' ἃς δυ- 24

ἀκούω: to hear, listen to, 2
δυνάμεις, -εως, ἡ: ability, capacity, power, 5
ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 3
ἐπι-μελῶς: carefully, attentively, 1
ἔπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 3
ζῆλος, ὁ: jealousy, rivalry, 1
θάρσος, -εος, ὁ: confidence, boldness, 1
θεραπεύω: to attend to, care for, 1
ἱατρός, ὁ: physician, doctor, 3
κάμνω: to be sick, suffer illness, toil, 1
κατα-φεύγω: to flee, take refuge to, 1
μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
μῖσος, -εος, τό: hate, hatred, 1
οἶμαι (οἶμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5

ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7
ὀργή, ἡ: anger, 3
παθητικός, -ή, -όν: capable of emotion, 1
πόθος, ὁ: longing, yearning, 1
προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5
σκεπτέος, -ον: to be examined/considered, 1
σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7
τρῆς, τρία: three, 4
φθόνος, ὁ: envy, 4
φιλία, ἡ: friendship, love, 2
φιλο-σοφέω: philosophize, seek knowledge, 2
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8
χαρά, ἡ: joy, 1
ψυχή, ἡ: soul, spirit; breath, life, 4

13 ἐπὶ δὲ τὸν λόγον καταφεύγοντες: *taking
refuge in words; 'fleeing to discourse'*
φιλοσοφεῖν: *that (they)...*; ind. disc.

14 ἔσεσθαι: *and that (they)...*; ind. disc., add
the acc. subject; fut. inf. εἰμί

τοῖς κάμνουσιν: *to (those)...*; pres. pple.,
dat. of special adj. ὅμοιος

15 οἷ...: *who...*; relative clause

τῶν ἱατρῶν: gen. of source after ἀκούουσι
16 τῶν προσταττομένων: *of the (things)...*;
pres. pass. pple

οὐδέ...οὐδέ: *not even...not even*; adverbs

εὖ ἔξουσι τὸ σῶμα: *will be well in body*;
fut. ἔχω + adv., here with an acc. of respect

17 (εὖ ἔξουσι) τὴν ψυχὴν: add verb, see l. 16

18 οὕτω: just as in ll. 12-14

σκεπτέον (ἐστίν): *it must be...*; '(it is) to be
considered'; impersonal verbal adj. (S2152)
19 ἐπεὶ...: *since...*

20 πάθη δυνάμεις ἔξεις: *emotions, capacities,
(and) dispositions*; in apposition to τρία

21 ἂν εἴη: *would...*; 3s pres. potential opt. εἰμί
λέγω πάθη: *I mean by emotions...*; or 'I
say that emotions (are)...

23 οἷς ἔπεται: *(things) which...accompany*;
(λέγω) δυνάμεις...λεγόμεθα: *(I mean) by
capacities (that) in respect to which we are
said to be capable of these (emotions)*
οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
καθ' ἃς: *in respect to which*

νατοὶ ὀργισθῆναι ἢ λυπηθῆναι ἢ ἐλεῆσαι· ἔξεις δὲ καθ' 25
 ἃς πρὸς τὰ πάθη ἔχομεν εὖ ἢ κακῶς, οἷον πρὸς τὸ ὀργι-
 σθῆναι, εἰ μὲν σφοδρῶς ἢ ἀναιμένως, κακῶς ἔχομεν, εἰ δὲ
 μέσως, εὖ· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ πρὸς τὰλλα. πάθη μὲν οὖν
 οὐκ εἰσὶν οὐθ' αἱ ἀρεταὶ οὐθ' αἱ κακίαι, ὅτι οὐ λεγόμεθα 30
 κατὰ τὰ πάθη σπουδαῖοι ἢ φαῦλοι, κατὰ δὲ τὰς ἀρετὰς
 καὶ τὰς κακίας λεγόμεθα, καὶ ὅτι κατὰ μὲν τὰ πάθη
 οὐτ' ἐπαινούμεθα οὔτε ψεγόμεθα (οὐ γὰρ ἐπαινέται ὁ φο-
 βούμενος οὐδὲ ὁ ὀργιζόμενος, οὐδὲ ψέγεται ὁ ἀπλῶς ὀργι-

ἀναιμένως: carelessly, at ease, laxidastically, 2
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, capable, possible, 5
 ἐλεέω: to have pity, show mercy, 3
 κακῶς: poorly, badly, 6
 μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 3

25 δυνατοὶ (εἰσὶν): (they are) able; + inf.
 ὀργισθῆναι, λυπηθῆναι: aor. pass. inf.
 ἐλεῆσαι: aor. act. inf.
 (λέγω) ἔξεις καθ' ἃς...: (I mean) by
 dispositions capacities (that) in respect to
 which...
 26 ἔχομεν: we are disposed
 οἷον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'
 τὸ ὀργισθῆναι: articular aor pass. inf. (-ing)
 27 ἀναιμένως: not vehemently; i.e. if the anger
 is too great or too little

σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9
 σφοδρῶς: vehemently, violently, 1
 φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8
 ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8

28 εὖ (ἔχομεν): supply verb
 τ(ὰ) ἄλλα: other things
 29 εἰσὶν: 3p pres. εἰμί
 οὐ(τε)...οὐ(τε): neither...nor...
 29 ὅτι: because
 λεγόμεθα (εἶναι): 1p pass., supply inf. εἰμί
 30 κατὰ: in accordance with...
 ὁ φοβούμενος: experience; perfect πάσχω
 οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ: nor...nor; separate uses, both
 are conjunctions following οὐ, the

ζόμενος ἀλλ' ὁ πως), κατὰ δὲ τὰς ἀρετὰς καὶ τὰς κακίας
ἐπαινούμεθα ἢ ψεγόμεθα. ἔτι ὀργιζόμεθα μὲν καὶ φοβού-
μεθα ἀπροαιρέτως, αἱ δ' ἀρεταὶ προαιρέσεις τινὲς ἢ οὐκ
ἄνευ προαιρέσεως. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις κατὰ μὲν τὰ πάθη
κινεῖσθαι λεγόμεθα, κατὰ δὲ τὰς ἀρετὰς καὶ τὰς κακίας 5
οὐ κινεῖσθαι ἀλλὰ διακεῖσθαι πως. διὰ ταῦτα δὲ οὐδὲ
δυνάμεις εἰσὶν· οὔτε γὰρ ἀγαθοὶ λεγόμεθα τῷ δύνασθαι
πάσχειν ἀπλῶς οὔτε κακοί, οὔτ' ἐπαινούμεθα οὔτε ψεγό-
μεθα· ἔτι δυνατοὶ μὲν ἐσμεν φύσει, ἀγαθοὶ δὲ ἢ κακοὶ
οὐ γινόμεθα φύσει· εἵπομεν δὲ περὶ τούτου πρότερον. εἰ 10
οὖν μήτε πάθη εἰσὶν αἱ ἀρεταὶ μήτε δυνάμεις, λείπεται
ἕξεις αὐτὰς εἶναι. ὃ τι μὲν οὖν ἐστὶ τῷ γένει ἢ ἀρετῇ,

ἄνευ: without (gen), 1

ἀ-προ-αιρέτως: not by choice, 1

γένος, -εος, τό: kind, type, 2

διά-κειμαι: to be disposed, 2

δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 9

δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: ability, capacity, power, 5

1 ὁ πως (ὀργιζόμενος): *the one...*; supply
pple

κατὰ: *in accordance with...*

3 προαιρέσεις τινὲς (εἰσὶν): nom. pred.; add.
linking verb

πρὸς: *in addition to* + dat.

6 οὐ κινεῖσθαι ἀλλὰ διακεῖσθαι πως
(λεγόμεθα): (*we are said*)...; add verb
above

7 διὰ: *on account of...*

7 λεγόμεθα (εἶναι): 1p pass., supply inf. εἰμί
τῷ δύνασθαι: *by...*; articular inf. (-ing) as a
dat. of means

δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, capable, possible, 5

κινέω: to set in motion, move, 4

λείπω: to leave; *pass.* fall short in (dat), 2

μή-τε: and not; neither...nor, 8

πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8

ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8

9 ἐσμεν: 1p pres. εἰμί

φύσε-ι: *by...*; dat. of respect, φύσις

10 εἵπομεν: 1p aor. λέγω

πρότερον: adverbial acc.

εἰ...εἰσὶν, λείπεται: *if they are...*; pres.
general condition (εἰ pres. ind. pres. ind.)

λείπεται: *it is left that...*; impersonal verb

12 ἕξεις αὐτὰς εἶναι: *that they...*; ind. disc.

with inf. εἰμί: αὐτὰς is acc. subject

ὃ τι: *what...*; neut. sg. interrogative ὅστις
introducing an ind. question,

τῷ γένει: *in...*; dat. of respect

εἴρηται.

6. Δεῖ δὲ μὴ μόνον οὕτως εἰπεῖν, ὃ τι ἔξις, ἀλλὰ καὶ ποία τις. ρητέον οὖν ὅτι πᾶσα ἀρετὴ, οὗ ἂν ἡ ἀρετὴ, 15
αὐτό τε εὖ ἔχον ἀποτελεῖ καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῦ εὖ ἀποδί-
δωσιν, οἷον ἡ τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ ἀρετὴ τὸν τε ὀφθαλμὸν σπου-
δαῖον ποιεῖ καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῦ· τῇ γὰρ τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ
ἀρετῇ εὖ ὁρῶμεν. ὁμοίως ἡ τοῦ ἵππου ἀρετὴ ἵππον τε 20
σπουδαῖον ποιεῖ καὶ ἀγαθὸν δραμεῖν καὶ ἐνεγκεῖν τὸν ἐπι-
βάτην καὶ μέναι τοὺς πολεμίους. εἰ δὴ τοῦτ' ἐπὶ πάντων
οὕτως ἔχει, καὶ ἡ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἀρετὴ εἴη ἂν ἡ ἔξις ἀφ'
ἧς ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος γίνεταί καὶ ἀφ' ἧς εὖ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἔρ-
γον ἀποδώσει. πῶς δὲ τοῦτ' ἔσται, ἡδὴ μὲν εἰρήκαμεν, ἔτι 24

ἀπο-δίδωμι: to render, exhibit, give back, 5
ἀπο-τελέω: to render, bring to completion, 1
ἐπι-βάτης, -ου, ὁ: rider, mounter, 1
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 4
ἵππος, ὁ: horse, 2
μένω: to stay, remain, abide, endure, 3
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4

13 εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)
μὴ μόνον... ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only... but also*
ὃ τι ἔξις (ἐστίν): *what...; interrogative neut.*
sg. ὅστις introducing an ind. question;
supply the linking verb
15 ποία τις (ἐστίν): *what sort at all (it is);*
ind. question; indefinite τις lends emphasis
to interrogative ποία
ρητέον (ἐστίν): *it must... ' (it is) to be*
mentioned, ' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί
expressing necessity (S2152)
ὅτι: *that...; ind. disc.*
οὗ ἂν ἡ ἀρετὴ: *of which it is a virtue (or*
excellence); general relative clause (ἂν + 3s
subj. εἰμί) modifying αὐτό
16 αὐτό... ἀποτελεῖ: *both makes the thing*
itself well disposed; the verb governs a
double acc. (obj. and pred.); αὐτό, 'the
thing itself,' refers to the object that
possesses the excellence; and pres. pple
ἔχον, 'the thing being (disposed),' is a pred.
καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῦ εὖ ἀποδίδωσιν: and

ὁράω: to see, look, behold, 6
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: eye, 3
πολέμιος, -α, -ον: hostile, of the enemy, 2
ρητέος, -ον: to be said or mentioned, 2
σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9
τρέχω: to run (aor. ἔδραμον), 1
φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 1

renders it's function well; i.e. makes it
execute it's function or task successfully
17 οἷον: *for example; 'in respect to which'*
18 ποιεῖ: *makes (x) (y); governs a double acc.*
τῇ... ἀρετῇ: *because of...; dat. of cause*
20 δραμεῖν... ἐνεγκεῖν... μέναι: *explanatory*
(epexegetical) infns. qualifying ἀγαθόν; aor.
inf. τρέχω, φέρω, and μένω respectively;
translate each inf. as 'at Xing'
21 δὴ: *accordingly, then; inferential*
ἐπὶ: *in the case of...*
22 οὕτως ἔχει: *it is so; ἔχω ('be disposed') +*
adv. is often translated as εἰμί + pred.
εἴη ἂν: *would...; 3s potential opt. εἰμί*
ἀφ' ἧς...: *ἀπὸ ἧς; relative clause, the fem.*
sg. antecedent is ἡ ἔξις
23 γίνεταί... ἀποδώσει: *assume ὁ ἄνθρωπος,*
'a person,' as subject
εὖ... ἔργον ἀποδώσει: *fut. ἀποδίδωμι;*
see l. 16 for translation
24 ἔσται: *3s fut. εἰμί*
εἰρήκαμεν: *1p pf. λέγω (ἐρέω)*

δὲ καὶ ὧδ' ἔσται φανερόν, ἐὰν θεωρήσωμεν ποία τίς ἐστίν 25
 ἢ φύσις αὐτῆς. ἐν παντὶ δὴ συνεχεῖ καὶ διαιρετῶ ἔστι
 λαβεῖν τὸ μὲν πλεῖον τὸ δ' ἔλαττον τὸ δ' ἴσον, καὶ ταῦτα
 ἢ κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἢ πρὸς ἡμᾶς· τὸ δ' ἴσον μέσον
 τι ὑπερβολῆς καὶ ἐλλείψεως. λέγω δὲ τοῦ μὲν πράγμα-
 τος μέσον τὸ ἴσον ἀπέχον ἀφ' ἐκατέρου τῶν ἄκρων, ὅπερ 30
 ἐστὶν ἐν καὶ τὸ αὐτὸ πᾶσιν, πρὸς ἡμᾶς δὲ ὁ μήτε πλεονά-
 ζει μήτε ἐλλείπει· τοῦτο δ' οὐχ ἓν, οὐδὲ ταυτὸν πᾶσιν.
 οἷον εἰ τὰ δέκα πολλὰ τὰ δὲ δύο ὀλίγα, τὰ ἕξ μέσα
 λαμβάνουσι κατὰ τὸ πρᾶγμα· ἴσῳ γὰρ ὑπερέχει τε καὶ
 ὑπερέχεται· τοῦτο δὲ μέσον ἐστὶ κατὰ τὴν ἀριθμητικὴν 35
 ἀναλογίαν. τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἡμᾶς οὐχ οὕτω ληπτέον· οὐ γὰρ

ἀνα-λογία, ἡ: proportion, analogy, 1
 ἀριθμητικός, -ή, -όν: arithmetical, 1
 δέκα: ten, 2
 δι-αιρετός, -ή, -όν: divided, separated, 1
 δύο: two, 6
 εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9
 ἑκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
 ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer, 5
 ἕξ: six, 2
 θεωρέω: to see, watch, look at, 1
 ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 6

25 ἔσται: 3s fut. εἰμί

ἐὰν θεωρήσωμεν: *if...*; a fut. more vivid condition (ἐάν + subj., fut.); translate this 1p aor. subj. as pres. with future sense
 ποία τις: *what sort at all...*; ind. question; indefinite τις emphasizes to interrogative ποία; see I. 15

26 αὐτῆς: gen. sg., ἡ ἕξις

ἐν παντί...διαιετῶ: *in everything...*

δὴ: *now, naturally, of course*; not intensive nor inferential but what is obvious (S2841)

27 ἔστι: *it is possible*; impersonal εἰμί

τὸ μὲν πλεῖον...ἴσον: *the more...*; a list of three substantives (use the article 'the')

ταῦτα (ἐστίν): *these (three) are...*; add verb

28 ἢ...ἢ...: *either...or...*

κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ πρᾶγμα: *in respect to the thing itself*; or 'in accordance with...'

τὸ πρᾶγμα will be explained below

πρὸς ἡμᾶς: *in relation to...*; perfect πάσχω

ληπτέος, -ον: to be taken or received, 3

μή-τε: and not; neither...nor, 8

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 6

ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9

πλεονάζω: to have excess of, abound in, 1

πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 7

συν-έχω: to hold together, 1

ὑπερ-έχω: to be above, hold above, 1

φανερὸς, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 5

ὧδε: in this way, in the following way, 1

μέσον τι (ἐστίν): *(is) a mean*; add verb

29 λέγω δὲ τοῦ μὲν πράγματος μέσον: *by the mean of a thing I mean/denote...*; 'I say the mean of a thing (is)...' perfect

30 τὸ...ἀπέχον: *the thing...*; substantive from the neut. sg. pres. pple

ἴσον: *equally*; adv. acc. (inner acc.)

ἄκρα: *extremes*; as often in this context

31 τὸ αὐτὸ: attributive αὐτός means 'same'

πᾶσιν: for...; dat. pl. πᾶς

πρὸς ἡμᾶς (λέγω): *by (the mean) in relation to us (I mean)*; add verb

δ...ἐλλείπει: *(that) which...*; relative clause with missing antecedent

32 τοῦτο (ἐστίν): add linking verb

ταυτὸν: τὸ αὐτὸ; see note I. 31

33 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'

τὰ δέκα πολλὰ...: *10 is many and 2 is few*

35 ἴσω: *by an equal amount*

36 ληπτέον (ἐστίν): *(is) to be taken up*

εἰ τῷ δέκα μναῖ φαγεῖν πολὺν δύο δὲ ὀλίγον, ὁ ἀλείπτῃς ἕξ μνᾶς προστάξει· ἔστι γὰρ ἴσως καὶ τοῦτο πολὺ τῷ ληψομένῳ ἢ ὀλίγον· Μίλωνι μὲν γὰρ ὀλίγον, τῷ δὲ ἀρχομένῳ τῶν γυμνασίων πολὺ. ὁμοίως ἐπὶ δρόμου καὶ πάλης. οὕτω δὴ πᾶς ἐπιστήμων τὴν ὑπερβολὴν μὲν καὶ τὴν ἔλλειψιν φεύγει, τὸ δὲ μέσον ζητεῖ καὶ τοῦθ' αἰρεῖται, μέσον δὲ οὐ τὸ τοῦ πράγματος ἀλλὰ τὸ πρὸς ἡμᾶς. εἰ δὴ πᾶσα ἐπιστήμη οὕτω τὸ ἔργον εὖ ἐπιτελεῖ, πρὸς τὸ μέσον βλέπουσα καὶ εἰς τοῦτο ἄγουσα τὰ ἔργα (ὅθεν εἰωθασιν ἐπιλέγειν τοῖς εὖ ἔχουσιν ἔργοις ὅτι οὗτ' ἀφελεῖν ἔστιν οὔτε προσθεῖναι, ὡς τῆς μὲν ὑπερβολῆς καὶ τῆς ἐλείψεως φθειρούσης τὸ εὖ, τῆς δὲ μεσότητος σωζούσης,

ἄγω: to conduct, do; lead, bring, 3

ἀλείπτῃς, -ου, ὁ: coach, trainer; anointer, 1

ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 3

ἀφ-αίρεω: to take away, exclude, 2

βλέπω: to look at, see, 2

γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercise; gymnasium, 3

δέκα: ten, 2

δρόμος, ὁ: course; race, foot-race, 1

δύο: two, 6

εἰωθα: to be accustomed, 1

ἕξ: six, 2

ἐπι-λέγω: to speak on, attribute, apply, 2

ἐπιστήμων, -ον: expert, wise in (gen), 1

1 οὐ γὰρ: οὐ modifies προστάξει

τῷ: for someone; alternative form for τινί

μναῖ: pounds; mina is both a unit of money

worth 100 drachmae and a weight (15.2 oz)

φαγεῖν: to eat; aor. inf. ἐσθίω; explanatory

(exegetical) inf. modifying πολὺν, ὀλίγον

πολὺν (εἰς): add linking verb

δύο (μναῖ) ὀλίγον (εἰς): add verb

2 (οὐ) προστάξει: fut.; include οὐ from l. 36

ἔστι: τούτο is the subject

καί: in fact; or 'actually,' adv.

3 τῷ ληψομένῳ: for (the one) ...; fut. mid.

λαμβάνω i.e. athlete overseen by trainer

Μίλωνι (ἐστίν): for Milo (it is); dat. interest

4 τῷ δὲ ἀρχομένῳ: for one ...; dat. of interest;

aor. mid. ppl + gen. object

(ἐστίν) πολὺ: add verb

ἐπὶ...: in the case of...

ἐπι-τελέω: to complete, finish, accomplish, 2

ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 4

Μίλων, Μίλωνος, ὁ: Milo, 1

μναῖ, -ᾶς, ἡ: 1 pound; mina (=100 drachmae), 2

ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 6

πάλη, ἡ: wrestling, 1

πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 7

προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, 2

προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5

σώζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4

ἐσθίω: to eat, 2

φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

5 δὴ: just, precisely; intensive with οὕτω

6 τοῦθ': τοῦτο, i.e. τὸ μέσον, the mean

αἰρεῖται: the middle voice of αἰρέω, 'take,' means 'choose' (lit. 'take for oneself')

7 μέστον (ἐστίν): the mean (is)...

τὸ τοῦ πράγματος (μέσον): (the mean)...

τὸ πρὸς ἡμᾶς (μέσον): (the mean)...

8 δὴ: accordingly, then; inferential

9 βλέπουσα... ἄγουσα...: by...by...; pres.

pples causal in sense, ἀγώ, 'lead'

εἰώθασιν: 3p pf. εἰωθα, translate as pres.

10 τοῖς ἔργοις: on works; dat. of compound

εὖ ἔχουσιν: being well disposed; dat. pl.

11 ἔστιν: it is allowed/possible; + aor. inf.

ὡς...σφζούσης: on the grounds that...; ὡς + pples (here two gen. abs.) express alleged cause from a character's point of view

12 τὸ εὖ: the good

οἱ δ' ἀγαθοὶ τεχνῦται, ὡς λέγομεν, πρὸς τοῦτο βλέποντες ἐργάζονται). ἡ δ' ἀρετὴ πάσης τέχνης ἀκριβεστέρα καὶ ἀμείνων ἐστὶν ὥσπερ καὶ ἡ φύσις, τοῦ μέσου ἂν εἴη στοχαστική. λέγω δὲ τὴν ἠθικὴν· αὕτη γάρ ἐστι περὶ πάθη καὶ πράξεις, ἐν δὲ τούτοις ἔστιν ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἔλλειψις καὶ τὸ μέσον. οἶον καὶ φοβηθῆναι καὶ θαρρῆσαι καὶ ἐπιθυμῆσαι καὶ ὀργισθῆναι καὶ ἐλεῆσαι καὶ ὄλως ἡσθῆναι καὶ λυπηθῆναι ἔστι καὶ μᾶλλον καὶ ἥττον, καὶ ἀμφοτέρω 20 οὐκ εὖ· τὸ δ' ὅτε δεῖ καὶ ἐφ' οἷς καὶ πρὸς οὓς καὶ οὐ ἐνεκα καὶ ὡς δεῖ, μέσον τε καὶ ἄριστον, ὅπερ ἐστὶ τῆς ἀρετῆς. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰς πράξεις ἔστιν ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἔλλειψις καὶ τὸ μέσον. ἡ δ' ἀρετὴ περὶ πάθη καὶ 24

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 4
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 2
ἀμφοτέρος, -α, -ον: both, each of two, 1
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
βλέπω: to look at, see, 2
ἐλεέω: to have pity, show mercy, 3
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, accomplish, 1

ἡδομαι: feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4
ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral, 6
ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
στοχαστικός, -ή, -όν: able to aim and hit, 3
τεχνίτης, ὁ: craftsman, artisan, 1

13 ὥς: *as...*; parenthetical
τοῦτο: i.e. τὸ μέσον
14 πάσης τέχνης: *than...*; gen. of comparison
ἀκριβεστέρα...: nom. pred. comparative adj.
15 καί: *also*
ἂν εἴη: *would...*; 3s potential opt. εἰμί
τοῦ μέσου: gen. with στοχαστική
16 λέγω: *I mean*; 'I am talking about'
τὴν ἠθικὴν (ἀρετὴν): add noun
17 ἔστιν: *there are...*; pl. subject
18 οἶον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'
φοβηθῆναι...λυπηθῆναι: all aor. act. and pass. infinitives governed by impersonal ἔστι, 'it is possible (for someone)'
20 καὶ μᾶλλον καὶ ἥττον...: *both too much and too little*; the comparative degree can express excess—as it does here

21 οὐκ εὖ: i.e. *wrongly*
τὸ δ(ε) ὅτε...ὥς δεῖ: *but (to feel)...*; a series of subordinate clause in the attributive position under τό; assume 'one ought to feel' in each clause
δεῖ: *one ought*; 'it is necessary (for one)'
ἐ(πὶ) οἷς: *on which terms*; i.e. under which circumstances or conditions
οὐ ἐνεκα: *for the sake of which purpose*
22 ὥς: *in what way...*; or 'how'
μέσον τε καὶ ἄριστον (ἐστίν): nom. pred. supply the linking verb πάσχω
τῆς ἀρετῆς: (*a sign*) of virtue; or 'of virtue' gen. of quality as predicate
23 καί: *also*
ἔστιν: parallel to 17-8 above
24 πάθη: neut. pl. παθέ-α

πράξεις ἐστίν, ἐν οἷς ἡ μὲν ὑπερβολὴ ἀμαρτάνεται καὶ ἡ 25
 ἔλλειψις [ψέγεται], τὸ δὲ μέσον ἐπαινείται καὶ κατορθο-
 νται· ταῦτα δ' ἄμφω τῆς ἀρετῆς. μεσότης τις ἄρα ἐστίν
 ἡ ἀρετὴ, στοχαστικὴ γε οὖσα τοῦ μέσου. ἔτι τὸ μὲν ἀμαρ-
 τάνειν πολλαχῶς ἔστιν (τὸ γὰρ κακὸν τοῦ ἀπείρου, ὡς οἱ
 Πυθαγόρειοι εἰκάζον, τὸ δ' ἀγαθὸν τοῦ πεπερασμένου), τὸ 30
 δὲ κατορθοῦν μοναχῶς (διὸ καὶ τὸ μὲν ῥάδιον τὸ δὲ χα-
 λεπὸν, ῥάδιον μὲν τὸ ἀποτυχεῖν τοῦ σκοποῦ, χαλεπὸν
 δὲ τὸ ἐπιτυχεῖν)· καὶ διὰ ταῦτ' οὖν τῆς μὲν κακίας ἡ
 ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἡ ἔλλειψις, τῆς δ' ἀρετῆς ἡ μεσότης·

ἐσθλοὶ μὲν γὰρ ἀπλῶς, παντοδαπῶς δὲ κακοί. 35

Ἔστιν ἄρα ἡ ἀρετὴ ἕξις προαιρετική, ἐν μεσότητι οὖσα

ἄμφω: both (dual), 8

ἄπειρος, -ον: infinite, 2

ἀπο-τυγχάνω: fail to hit or attain (gen), 2

ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 6

εἰκάζω: to liken, imagine, describe by comparison, 1

ἐπι-τυγχάνω: to hit upon or attain, (gen), 1

ἐσθλός, -ή, -όν: good, brave, 1

κατ-ορθόω: to succeed, set right, 3

μονα-χῶς: in only one way, 1

παντα-δαπῶς: in every kind of way, 1

περαίνω: to end, limit, finish, 1

πολλαχῶς: in many ways, 2

προ-αιρετικός, -ή, -όν: of choice, 1

Πυθαγόρειος, -ον: Pythagorean, 1

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7

σκοπός, ὁ: target, mark, 2

στοχαστικός, -ή, -όν: able to aim and hit, 3

ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8

25 ἐν οἷς...: relative clause, both πάθη and πράξεις are antecedents

ἀμαρτάνεται: are errors; 'miss the mark'

26 [ψέγεται]: omit

27 ταῦτα ἄμφω (εἰσίν): nom. subj.; add verb

τῆς ἀρετῆς: (a sign) of virtue; or 'of virtue' gen. of quality as predicate

28 τοῦ μέσου: obj. of στοχαστικὴ

τὸ...ἀμαρτάνειν: articular inf. (-ing)

29 τοῦ ἀπείρου (ἐστίν): (is) ...; gen. of quality ὥς: as ...; parenthetical

30 εἰκάζον: 3p impf.

τοῦ πεπερασμένου (ἐστίν): of the limited; gen. of quality, pf. pass. pple περαίνω

τὸ κατορθοῦν (ἐστίν): succeeding; articular inf. o-contract verb or unlikely a neut. pple

31 τὸ μὲν (ἐστίν)...τὸ δὲ (ἐστίν)...: the one (is) ...the other (is); i.e failure and success

32 ῥάδιον μὲν (ἐστίν): add verb

χαλεπὸν δὲ (ἐστίν) τὸ ἐπιτυχεῖν (τοῦ σκοποῦ): parallel to the clause above

33 τῆς μὲν κακίας: (are) of vice; gen. of quality or 'are the mark of vice'

34 τῆς δ' ἀρετῆς: (are) of virtue; gen. of quality or 'are the mark of virtue'

35 ἐσθλοὶ...δὲ κακοί.: the author of this line is unknown

36 οὖσα: pres. pple εἰμί

τῇ πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὠρισμένη λόγῳ καὶ ᾧ ἂν ὁ φρόνιμος
 ὀρίσειεν. μεσότης δὲ δύο κακιῶν, τῆς μὲν καθ' ὑπερβο-
 λὴν τῆς δὲ κατ' ἔλλειψιν· καὶ ἔτι τῷ τὰς μὲν ἐλλείπειν
 τὰς δ' ὑπερβάλλειν τοῦ δέοντος ἔν τε τοῖς πάθεσι καὶ ἐν
 ταῖς πράξεσι, τὴν δ' ἀρετὴν τὸ μέσον καὶ εὐρίσκειν καὶ 5
 αἰρεῖσθαι. διὸ κατὰ μὲν τὴν οὐσίαν καὶ τὸν λόγον τὸν τὸ
 τί ἦν εἶναι λέγοντα μεσότης ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετή, κατὰ δὲ τὸ
 ἄριστον καὶ τὸ εὖ ἀκρότης. οὐ πᾶσα δ' ἐπιδέχεται πρᾶξις
 οὐδὲ πᾶν πάθος τὴν μεσότητα· ἔνια γὰρ εὐθύς ὠνόμασται
 συνελημμένα μετὰ τῆς φαυλότητος, οἷον ἐπιχαιρεκακία 10
 ἀναισχυντία φθόνος, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν πράξεων μοιχεία κλοπὴ
 ἀνδροφονία· πάντα γὰρ ταῦτα καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα λέγεται

ἀκρότης, -ητος, ὁ: extreme, 1
 ἀν-αισχυντία, ἡ: shamelessness, 1
 ἀνδρο-φονία, ἡ: slaying of men, 1
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
 δέον, τό: what is right, proper, 3
 δύο: two, 6
 ἐπι-δέχομαι: to admit, allow, accept, 1
 ἐπιχαιρεκακία, ἡ: joy over another's
 misfortune, 2
 εὐθύς -εἶα, -ύ: straight; *adv.* straight away, 3
 εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 2

- 1 τῇ πρὸς ἡμᾶς: prepositional phrase in the
 attributive position modifying μεσότητι
 ὠρισμένη: *defined*; pf. pass. pple, the pple
 describes the definition but is not part of it
 λόγῳ: dat. of means
 ᾧ ἂν ὁ φρόνιμος ὀρίσειεν: *and by what...
 would...;* ' (by that) by which...would; ' a
 relative clause with 3s potential aor. opt.;
 the missing antecedent is a dat. of means
 2 (ἐστίν) μεσότης: *it is...;* nom. pred. + gen.
 is 'the mean of...' or 'the mean between...'
 τῆς μὲν...τῆς δ': *one (vice)...the other...;*
 partitive apposition (S981)
 κα(τὰ): *in (respect to);* 'in accordance with'
 3 καὶ ἔτι τῷ: *and in addition therefore;* τῷ
 is an inferential particle formed from the
 article ὁ, ἡ, τό (S2987)
 τὰς μὲν (κακίας)...τὰς δέ...: *that some
 (vices)... and other...;* acc. subjects in ind.
 disc. (the main verb is understood)

- κλοπή, ἡ: theft, 1
 μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
 μοιχεία, ἡ: adultery, 1
 ὀνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
 ὀρίζω: to define, mark out, 6
 οὐσία, ἡ: substance, essence; wealth, 2
 συλ-λαμβάνω: to take together, grasp, 1
 τῷ: therefore, then, in this way, 2
 φαυλότης, -ητος, ἡ: baseness, badness, 1
 φθόνος, ὁ: envy, 4
 φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 1
 4 τοῦ δέοντος: *from...;* gen. of τό δέον and
 obj. of both inf.s.; a common substantive
 formed from the neut. pple of δεῖ
 5 τὴν δ' ἀρετὴν: *but that virtue...;* ind. disc.
 καί...καί...: *both*
 6 κατὰ...: *in (respect to)...*
 τὸν...λέγοντα: *saying...;* pres. pple in
 attributive position modifying λόγον
 τὸ τί ἦν εἶναι: *the essence of what it is;* 'the
 being what it is;' a much discussed phrase:
 τὸ εἶναι is an articular inf. and obj. of the
 pple; τί ἦν is an ind. question and pred. of
 εἶναι; ἦν is 3s impf. of a truth just realized
 (S1902), which is often present in English
 7 κατὰ...: *in (respect to)...* τὸ εὖ: *the good*
 8 ἀκρότης (ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετή): ellipsis
 9 ἔνια...εὐθύς ὠνόμασται : *some (vices) are
 at once named;* 3s pf. pass. ὀνομάζω
 συνελημμένα: *comprehended;* pf. pass. pple
 11 ἐπὶ: *in the case of...*

τῷ αὐτὰ φαῦλα εἶναι, ἀλλ' οὐχ αἱ ὑπερβολαὶ αὐτῶν
οὐδ' αἱ ἐλλείψεις. οὐκ ἔστιν οὖν οὐδέποτε περὶ αὐτὰ κατ-
ορθοῦν, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ ἀμαρτάνειν· οὐδ' ἔστι τὸ εὖ ἢ μὴ εὖ 15
περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐν τῷ ἦν δεῖ καὶ ὅτε καὶ ὡς μοιχεύειν,
ἀλλ' ἀπλῶς τὸ ποιεῖν ὅτιοῦν τούτων ἀμαρτάνειν ἐστίν.
ὅμοιον οὖν τὸ ἀξιοῦν καὶ περὶ τὸ ἀδικεῖν καὶ δειλαίνειν
καὶ ἀκολασταίνειν εἶναι μεσότητα καὶ ὑπερβολὴν καὶ ἔλ-
λειψιν· ἔσται γὰρ οὕτω γε ὑπερβολῆς καὶ ἐλλείψεως με- 20
σότης καὶ ὑπερβολῆς ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἔλλειψις ἐλλείψεως.
ὥσπερ δὲ σωφροσύνης καὶ ἀνδρείας οὐκ ἔστιν ὑπερβολὴ καὶ
ἐλλειψις διὰ τὸ τὸ μέσον εἶναί πως ἄκρον, οὕτως οὐδ'
ἐκείνων μεσότης οὐδ' ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἔλλειψις, ἀλλ' ὡς ἂν 24

ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 2

αἰεῖ: always, forever, in every case, 6

ἀκολασταίνειω: to be licentious, intemperate, 2

ἀξιόω: to think worthy, deem right, 1

δειλαίνω: to be a coward, 1

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8

κατ-ορθόω: to succeed, set right, 3

μοιχεύω: to commit adultery, 1

ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7

ὅστις-οὖν, ἥτις-οὖν, ὅτι-οὖν: whosoever, 5

οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 1

τῷ: therefore, then, in this way, 2

φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8

13 τῷ: *therefore*

αὐτὰ: *themselves*; intensive

αὐτῶν: *of them*; i.e. πάντα...τοιαῦτα

14 ἔστιν: *it is possible*

οὐδέποτε: *ever*; following οὐκ

κατορθοῦν: pres. inf. ο-contrast verb

15 (ἔστιν) ἀμαρτάνειν: (*it is possible*)...

οὐδέ ἔστι...περὶ: *nor is...concerning...*

τὸ εὖ ἢ μὴ εὖ: *right or wrong*; subject τὸ εὖ is elsewhere translated 'good' or 'success,' but here τὸ εὖ (πράττειν), 'doing well' and τὸ μὴ εὖ (πράττειν), 'not doing well'

16 ἐν τῷ...μοιχεύειν: (*in the case of*) committing adultery...; articular inf.

ἦν δεῖ καὶ ὅτε (δεῖ) καὶ ὡς (δεῖ): *with whom one ought and when (one ought) and how (one ought)...*; i.e. with the right person, at the right time and in the right manner

17 τὸ ποιεῖν: articular inf. as subject ὅτιοῦν τούτων: *whatsoever of these*; i.e. of the vices noted above; obj. of τὸ ποιεῖν

ὅμοιον οὖν (ἔστι): *similar then (is)*; pred.

τὸ ἀξιοῦν: *thinking that there is in fact a mean and excess and a deficiency concerning being unjust, being a coward and being intemperate*; ind. disc. governed by ἀξιοῦν nom. sg. ο-contrast articular inf.

20 ἔσται: *there will be...*; 3s fut. εἰμί

οὕτω γε: *in this way at least*; Aristotle considers the consequences of II. 18-20

21 ὥσπερ δέ: *but just as...*; strong adversative

σωφροσύνης καὶ ἀνδρείας: gen. sg.

διὰ τὸ...εἶναι...: *on account of...being...*; this articular inf. has an acc. subject and acc. pred. (ἄκρον, 'extreme')

23 οὕτως: *so...*; responding to ὥσπερ

οὐδ(ε)...οὐδ(ε): *not even...nor*

ἐκείνων: i.e. of vices

ὡς ἂν πράττηται: *in whatever way (these vices)...*; general relative clause with ἂν + pres. pass. subj.: assume a neut. pl. subject

πράττῃται ἀμαρτάνεται· ὅλως γὰρ οὐθ' ὑπερβολῆς καὶ 25
ἐλλείψεως μεσότης ἔστιν, οὔτε μεσότητος ὑπερβολὴ καὶ
ἐλλειψις.

7. Δεῖ δὲ τοῦτο μὴ μόνον καθόλου λέγεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ
τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστα ἐφαρμόττειν. ἐν γὰρ τοῖς περὶ τὰς
πράξεις λόγοις οἱ μὲν καθόλου κοινότεροί εἰσιν, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ 30
μέρους ἀληθινώτεροι· περὶ γὰρ τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα αἱ πράξεις,
δέον δ' ἐπὶ τούτων συμφωνεῖν. ληπτέον οὖν ταῦτα ἐκ τῆς
διαγραφῆς. περὶ μὲν οὖν φόβους καὶ θάρρη ἀνδρεία μεσό-

ἀληθινός, -ή, -όν: truthful, true, real, 2
δια-γραφῆ, ἡ: diagram, 1
ἐφ-αρμόττω: apply, accommodate (+dat), 1
θάρρος, -εος, τό: rashness, confidence, 3
καθ-όλου: on the whole, in general, 4
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common(place); public, 7

ληπτέος, -ον: to be taken or received, 3
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4
συμ-φωνέω: be in harmony or agreement, 2
φόβος, ό: fear, terror, panic, 8

25 ἀμαρτάνεται: *they are wrong*; 'do wrong'
supply neut. pl. vices as the subject
οὔ(τε)...οὔτε: *neither...nor*
26 ἔστιν: *there exists, there is*
28 τοῦτο: i.e. the definition of ἡ ἀρετή
(1106b36-1107a1); acc. subject of λέγεσθαι
and ἐφαρμόττειν
μὴ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: *not only...but also...*
29 τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστα: *to particular virtues*;
'those each by each,' contrast to καθ-όλου
29 ἐν τοῖς...λόγοις: *in accounts*
30 οἱ μὲν καθόλου: *general (accounts)*,
general (accounts); καθόλου in attributive
position
οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ μέρους: *accounts in the case of a*
particular part; ἐπὶ μέρους is attributive
31 τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα: *particulars*
αἱ πράξεις (εἰσὶν): add linking verb

32 (ἐ)δέον: *they had to...*; + inf. 3p impf. δέω,
'ought,' the impf. suggests necessity that is
still true in the present: had to and still
must. The subject is still πράξεις
ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*; τούτων refers to τὰ
καθ' ἕκαστα
32 ληπτέον (ἔστιν) ταῦτα: *(we) must...* '(it is)
to be taken up (by us) these things'
impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing
necessity and often translated actively;
ταῦτα is the acc. obj. (S2152)
ἐκ τῆς διαγραφῆς: *from the diagram*; the
diagram, now missing, was apparently a
table of virtues with a virtue as a mean and
two vices representing excess or deficiency
33 θάρρη: *instances of rashness*; θάρρ-ε-
ἀνδρεία (ἔστιν): nom. subj., the article ἡ
is missing through crasis

της· τῶν δ' ὑπερβαλλόντων ὁ μὲν τῇ ἀφοβίᾳ ἀνώνυμος
(πολλὰ δ' ἐστὶν ἀνώνυμα), ὁ δ' ἐν τῷ θαρρεῖν ὑπερβάλ-
λων θρασύς, ὁ δ' ἐν τῷ μὲν φοβείσθαι ὑπερβάλλον τῷ δὲ
θαρρεῖν ἐλλείπων δειλός. περὶ ἡδονὰς δὲ καὶ λύπας—οὐ
πάσας, ἦττον δὲ †καὶ† περὶ τὰς λύπας—μεσότης μὲν σω- 5
φροσύνη, ὑπερβολὴ δὲ ἀκολασία. ἐλλείποντες δὲ περὶ τὰς
ἡδονὰς οὐ πάνυ γίνονται· διόπερ οὐδ' ὀνόματος τετυχή-
κασιν οὐδ' οἱ τοιοῦτοι, ἔστωσαν δὲ ἀναίσθητοι. περὶ δὲ δό-
σων χρημάτων καὶ λήψιν μεσότης μὲν ἐλευθεριότης, ὑπερ-
βολὴ δὲ καὶ ἔλλειψις ἀσωτία καὶ ἀνελευθερία. ἐναντίως 10
δ' ἐν αὐταῖς ὑπερβάλλουσι καὶ ἐλλείπουσιν· ὁ μὲν γὰρ
ἄσωτος ἐν μὲν προέσει ὑπερβάλλει ἐν δὲ λήψει ἐλλείπει,

ἀν-αισθητός, -όν: ascetic; insensible, 5

ἀν-ελευθερία, ἡ: lack of generosity, stinginess, 1

ἀν-ώνυμος, -ον: nameless, without a name, 8

ἀ-σωτία, ἡ: extravagance, wastefulness, 2

ἄ-σωτος, -η, -ον: extravagant, wasteful, 3

ἀ-φοβία, ἡ: fearlessness, 2

διόπερ: for which very reason, 3

1 τῶν δ' ὑπερβαλλόντων: *among those in excess*; 'of those exceeding' partitive gen.

ὁ μὲν (ὑπερβάλλον): *the one (exceeding)*; supply the pres. pple

τῇ ἀφοβίᾳ: *in...*; dat. of respect

ἀνώνυμος (ἐστίν): nom. pred.

2 ὁ δὲ...ὑπερβάλλον: parallel to line 1

ἐν τῷ θαρρεῖν: articular inf. (-ing)

3 θρασύς (ἐστίν): nom. pred.

ὁ δὲ...ὑπερβάλλον: parallel to line 1

τῷ δὲ θαρρεῖν: *from...*; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of compound verb

ἐλλείπων

4 δειλός (ἐστίν): nom. pred.

5 ἦττον δὲ: *and to a lesser degree*; 'less,' comparative adv.

†καὶ†: A obelus (†) indicates that the word is plainly corrupt but the editor cannot see

δόσις, -εως, ἡ: giving, 1

ἐλευθεριότης, -ητος, ὁ: generosity, liberality, 4

ἐναντίως: *in an opposite or contrary way*, 2

λήψις, ἡ: receiving, acceptance, 2

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 6

πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6

πρό-εσις, ἡ: throwing away (opp. λήψις), 2

χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: money; property, 5

how to emend it. Omit in translation.

μεσότης μὲν (ἐστίν): add verb

6 ὑπερβολὴ δὲ (ἐστίν): add verb

οὐ πάνυ: *not quite (often)*; i.e. scarcely

γίνονται: *occur*

οὐδ(ἐ)...οὐδ(ἐ): *and not...not even*

τετυχήσασιν: 3p pf. τυγχάνω, 'attain' + gen. obj.

8 ἔστωσαν: *Let them be...*; 3p pres.

imperative εἰμί; Aristotle gives them a name

9 μεσότης μὲν (ἐστίν): add verb

ὑπερβολὴ δὲ καὶ ἔλλειψις (εἰσίν): add verb

11 ἐν αὐταῖς: i.e. ἀσωτία καὶ ἀνελευθερία

ὑπερβάλλουσι καὶ ἐλλείπουσιν: as subject, add extravagant person and stingy persons

12 προέσει: dat. sg. προέσις

ὁ δ' ἀνελεύθερος ἐν μὲν λήψει ὑπερβάλλει ἐν δὲ προέσει
 ἐλλείπει. νῦν μὲν οὖν τύπῳ καὶ ἐπὶ κεφαλαίου λέγομεν,
 ἀρκούμενοι αὐτῷ τούτῳ· ὕστερον δὲ ἀκριβέστερον περὶ αὐ- 15
 τῶν διορισθήσεται. περὶ δὲ χρήματα καὶ ἄλλαι διαθέσεις
 εἰσί, μεσότης μὲν μεγαλοπρέπεια (ὁ γὰρ μεγαλοπρεπὴς
 διαφέρει ἐλευθερίου· ὁ μὲν γὰρ περὶ μέγала, ὁ δὲ περὶ
 μικρά), ὑπερβολὴ δὲ ἀπειροκαλία καὶ βαναυσία, ἔλλει-
 ψις δὲ μικροπρέπεια· διαφέρουσι δ' αὐται τῶν περὶ τὴν 20
 ἐλευθεριότητα, πῇ δὲ διαφέρουσιν, ὕστερον ῥηθήσεται. περὶ
 δὲ τιμὴν καὶ ἀτιμίαν μεσότης μὲν μεγαλοψυχία, ὑπερ-
 βολὴ δὲ χαυνότης τις λεγομένη, ἔλλειψις δὲ μικροψυχία·
 ὡς δ' ἐλέγομεν ἔχειν πρὸς τὴν μεγαλοπρέπειαν τὴν ἐλευ- 24

ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 4
 ἀν-ελεύθερος, -ον: ungenerous, stingy, 3
 ἀ-πειροκαλία, ἡ: tastelessness, lack of taste, 1
 ἀρκέω: suffice, be enough; *pass.* be satisfied, 2
 ἀ-τιμία, ἡ: dishonor, 1
 βαναυσία, ἡ: vulgarity, workman's taste, 1
 διά-θεσις, -εως ἡ: disposition, arrangement, 4
 δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, determine, 6
 ἐλευθέριος, -α, -ον: generous, liberal, 4
 ἐλευθεριότης, -ητος, ὁ: generosity, liberality, 4
 κεφάλαιον, τό: main point, sum, gist, 2
 λῆψις, ἡ: receiving, acceptance, 2
 μεγαλο-πρέπεια, ἡ: magnificence, 2
 μεγαλο-πρεπής, -ές: magnificent, 1

13 τύπῳ: *in*...; dat. of manner
 14 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of*...; perfect πάσχω
 15 αὐτῷ τούτῳ: *with*...; dat. of means,
 αὐτῷ is an intensive pronoun
 ὕστερον: adverbial acc.
 ἀκριβέστερον: comparative adv.
 16 διορισθήσεται: fut. pass.
 καί: *also*
 εἰσί: 3p pres. εἰμί
 17 μεσότης μὲν (ἐστίν): add verb
 18 ἐλευθερίου: *from*...; gen. of separation
 ὁ μὲν (ἐστίν)...ὁ δὲ (ἐστίν): *one is...the other is*...; 'this...that' the accented article
 ὁ indicates that the article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)

μεγαλο-ψυχία, ἡ: magnanimity, highmindedness, 2
 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7
 μικρο-πρέπεια, ἡ: cheapness, meanness, 1
 μικρο-ψυχία ἡ: pettiness, smallmindedness, 1
 νῦν: now; as it is, 7
 πῇ: in what way, how, 1
 πρό-εσις, ἡ: throwing away (opp. λῆψις), 2
 τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8
 τύπος, ὁ: mark, outline; sketch, 5
 ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv.* later, 5
 χαυνότης, -ητος, ἡ: empty vanity, conceit, 1
 χρήμα, -ατος, τό: money; property, 5

19 ὑπερβολὴ δὲ (ἐστίν): add verb
 ἔλλειψις δὲ (ἐστίν): add verb
 20 τῶν...ἐλευθεριότητα: *from those*...; gen. of separation
 21 ὕστερον: adverbial acc.
 ῥηθήσεται: *it will*...; impersonal fut. pass.
 λέγω (ἔρῳ)
 22 μεσότης μὲν (ἐστίν): add verb
 ὑπερβολὴ δὲ (ἐστίν): add verb
 23 λεγομένη: *so-called*; pass. ppl
 24 ὡς...: *as*...; introducing a clause of comparison answered by οὕτως
 ἔχειν...τὴν ἐλευθεριότητα: *that generosity is disposed*...; ind. disc.

25 *θεριότητα, <τῷ> περὶ μικρὰ διαφέρουσιν, οὕτως ἔχει τις καὶ*
πρὸς τὴν μεγαλοψυχίαν, περὶ τιμὴν οὖσαν μεγάλην, αὐτὴ
περὶ μικρὰν οὖσα· ἔστι γὰρ ὡς δεῖ ὀρέγεσθαι τιμῆς καὶ
μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ καὶ ἡττον, λέγεται δ' ὁ μὲν ὑπερβάλλον
ταῖς ὀρέξεσι φιλότιμος, ὁ δ' ἐλλείπων ἀφιλότιμος, ὁ δὲ
 30 *μέσος ἀνώνυμος. ἀνώνυμοι δὲ καὶ αἱ διαθέσεις, πλὴν ἡ*
τοῦ φιλοτίμου φιλοτιμία. ὅθεν ἐπιδικάζονται οἱ ἄκροι τῆς
μέσης χώρας· καὶ ἡμεῖς δὲ ἔστι μὲν ὅτε τὸν μέσον φιλό-
τιμον καλοῦμεν ἔστι δ' ὅτε ἀφιλότιμον, καὶ ἔστι μὲν ὅτε

ἀν-ώνυμος, -ον: nameless, without a name, 8
 ἀ-φιλοτιμος, -ον: unambitious/ not honor-
 loving, 3

διά-θεσις, -εως ἡ: disposition, arrangement, 4
 ἐπι-δικάζομαι: to lay claim on (gen.), 1
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 4
 μεγαλο-ψυχία, ἡ: magnanimity, highminded-
 ness, 2

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7

25 μικρὰ: *small things*

οὕτως ἔχει: *is disposed...; ἔχω + adv. is translated as εἰμί + pred.*

τις: *a certain (state)*

καὶ: *also*

26 οὖσαν: pres. ppl. εἰμί

μεγάλην: *modifies τιμὴν*

αὐτῇ: *this; i.e. μικροψυχία; modifies nom. τις, which refers indirectly to μικροψυχία*

27 περὶ μικρὰν (τιμὴν): ellipsis

ἔστι ὥς: *it is possible that...*

τιμῆς: gen. obj. of verb of desire (1349)

καὶ...καὶ...: *both...and...*

28 ἡττον (ἢ δεῖ): *less...; ellipsis, comparative adv. ἡττων*

ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7
 ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
 ὀρεξις, ἡ: desire, longing, striving, 5

πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 6

τιμῆ, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8

φιλο-τιμία, ἡ: ambition, love of honor, 2

φιλο-τιμος, -ον: ambitious, honor-loving, 4

χώρα, ἡ: place; region, 1

λέγεται (εἶναι): as often, the εἰμί is understood and governs a nom. pred.

29 ταῖς ὀρέξεσι: *in...; dat. of respect*

φιλότιμος (ἐστίν)

ἀφιλότιμος (ἐστίν)

30 ἀνώνυμος (ἐστίν)

ἀνώνυμοι (εἰσίν)

ἡ τοῦ φιλοτίμου (διάθεσις ἐστίν):

31 ὅθεν: *for this reason; 'whence,' inferential*

οἱ ἄκροι: *the people at the extreme*

ἔστι μὲν ὅτε...ἔστι δὲ ὅτε: *sometimes...at*

other times; 'there is (a time) when...there is (a time) when...'; a common idiom with missing antecedent (S2515)

33 ἔστι μὲν ὅτε...: *sometimes*

ἐπαινοῦμεν τὸν φιλότιμον ἔστι δ' ὅτε τὸν ἀφιλότιμον. διὰ
 τίνα δ' αἰτίαν τοῦτο ποιούμεν, ἐν τοῖς ἐξῆς ῥηθήσεται· νῦν
 δὲ περὶ τῶν λοιπῶν λέγωμεν κατὰ τὸν ὑφηγημένον τρό-
 πον. ἔστι δὲ καὶ περὶ τὴν ὀργὴν ὑπερβολὴ καὶ ἔλλειψις καὶ
 μεσότης, σχεδὸν δὲ ἀνωνύμων ὄντων αὐτῶν τὸν μέσον 5
 πρᾶον λέγοντες τὴν μεσότητα πραότητα καλέσωμεν· τῶν
 δ' ἄκρων ὁ μὲν ὑπερβάλλων ὀργίλος ἔστω, ἡ δὲ κακία ὀρ-
 γιλότης, ὁ δ' ἐλλείπων ἀόργητός τις, ἡ δ' ἔλλειψις ἀορ-
 γησία. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι τρεῖς μεσότητες, ἔχουσαι μὲν
 τινα ὁμοιότητα πρὸς ἀλλήλας, διαφέρουσαι δ' ἀλλήλων· 10
 πᾶσαι μὲν γάρ εἰσι περὶ λόγων καὶ πράξεων κοινωνίαν,
 διαφέρουσι δὲ ὅτι ἡ μὲν ἔστι περὶ τάληθες τὸ ἐν αὐτοῖς,

αἰτία, ἡ: reason, cause, responsibility, 7

ἀ-οργησία, ἡ: deficiency in anger, 1

ἀ-όργητος, -ον: deficient in anger, 1

ἀ-φιλοτιμος, -ον: unambitious/ not honor-
 loving, 3

ἀληθής, -ές: true, 8

ἀλλήλων: one another, 8

ἀν-ώνυμος, -ον: nameless, without a name, 8

ἐξῆς: in order, one after another, next, 1

καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 4

κοινωνία, ἡ: community, association, 1

νῦν: now; as it is, 7

ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 4

ὀργή, ἡ: anger, 3

ὀργίλος, -η, -ον: prone to anger, 2

ὀργιλότης, -ητος, ἡ: ability to be angered, 1

πρᾶος, -ον: gentle, mild, 3

πραότης, -ητος, ὁ: gentleness, mildness, 1

σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 1

τρεῖς, τρία: three, 4

τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5

ὑφ-ηγέομαι: to go just before, lead, 1

φιλο-τιμος, -ον: ambitious, honor-loving, 4

1 ἔστι δὲ ὅτε: *at other times*; 'there is (a time)
 when...there is (a time) when...'; common
 idiom with missing antecedent (S2515)

διὰ τίνα δ' αἰτίαν...: *for what...*; ind.
 question

2 ἐν τοῖς ἐξῆς: *in the following*; 'in the next
 (words); adv. ἐξῆς in the attributive position
 ῥηθήσεται: *it will...*; fut. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)

3 λέγωμεν: *let...*; 1p hortatory subj.

τὸν...τρόπον: *in...*; adv. acc.

ὑφηγημένον: *normal, ongoing*; 'going just
 before'

4 καὶ...καὶ...καὶ...: *also...both...and..*

5 σχεδόν...όντων αὐτῶν: gen. abs.

6 λέγοντες: *calling* (x)(y); governs a double
 acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)

καλέσωμεν: *let...*; 1p aor. hortatory subj.

τῶν δ' ἄκρων: *of the...*; partitive gen.

7 ἔστω: *let...be*; 3s pres. imperative εἰμί

ὀργιλότης (ἔστω): nom. pred.

8 ἀόργητός τις (ἔστω)

ἀοργησία (ἔστω)

9 εἰσὶ: *there are...*

ἔχουσαι: nom. pl. pres. ppl. ἔχω

10 διαφέρουσαι: pres. ppl.

ἀλλήλων: *from...*; partitive gen.

11 κοινωνίαν: true object of περὶ

12 ὅτι: *because*

ἡ μὲν...: *this one...*; ἡ is not an relative but a
 demonstrative formed from the article ἡ
 (S1107)

τ(ὸ) ἀληθές: *the truth*; crasis

τὸ ἐν αὐτοῖς: i.e. in λόγων and πράξεων;
 prepositional phrase in attributive position
 modifying ἀληθές

αἱ δὲ περὶ τὸ ἡδύ· τούτου δὲ τὸ μὲν ἐν παιδιᾷ τὸ δ' ἐν
 πᾶσι τοῖς κατὰ τὸν βίον. ῥητέον οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτων, ἵνα
 μᾶλλον κατίδωμεν ὅτι ἐν πᾶσι ἡ μεσότης ἐπαινετόν, τὰ 15
 δ' ἄκρα οὐτ' ἐπαινετὰ οὐτ' ὀρθὰ ἀλλὰ ψεκτά. εἰς μὲν
 οὖν καὶ τούτων τὰ πλείω ἀνώνυμα, πειρατέον δ', ὥσπερ
 καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων, αὐτοὺς ὀνοματοποιεῖν σαφηνείας ἐνε-
 κα καὶ τοῦ εὐπαρακολουθήτου. περὶ μὲν οὖν τὸ ἀληθές
 ὁ μὲν μέσος ἀληθής τις καὶ ἡ μεσότης ἀλήθεια λεγέσθω, 20
 ἡ δὲ προσποίησης ἡ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ μείζον ἀλαζονεία καὶ ὁ
 ἔχων αὐτὴν ἀλαζών, ἡ δ' ἐπὶ τὸ ἔλαττον εἰρωνεία καὶ εἶρων
 <ὁ ἔχων>. περὶ δὲ τὸ ἡδὺ τὸ μὲν ἐν παιδιᾷ ὁ μὲν μέσος
 εὐτράπελος καὶ ἡ διάθεσις εὐτραπελία, ἡ δ' ὑπερβολὴ βω- 24

ἀλαζονεία, ἡ: boastfulness, 1
 ἀλαζών, -όνος, ὁ, ἡ: boastful, 2
 ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 5
 ἀληθής, -ές: true, 8
 ἀν-ώνυμος, -ον: nameless, without a name, 8
 βίος, ὁ: life, 5
 βωμολοχία, ἡ: buffoonery, 1
 διά-θεσις, -εως ἡ: disposition, arrangement, 4
 εἶρων, εἶρωνος, ὁ, ἡ: falsely modest, 1
 εἰρωνεία, ἡ: false modesty, 1
 ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer, 5
 ἐπαινετός, -η, -ον: praiseworthy, 4
 εὐ-παρακολούητος, -ον: easy to follow, 1

13 αἱ δὲ: *those other (two)...*; αἱ is not a relative but demonstrative from αἱ (S1107)
 τὸ ἡδύ: *pleasantness*; 'the pleasant'
 τούτου δὲ τὸ μὲν... βίον: *of this (pleasure) one is in child's play and the other in all matters in life*; partitive gen. referring to ἡδύ; of the two means concerning pleasure, one mean is found in play, the other in life
 14 ῥητέον (ἐστίν): *we must...* '(it is) to be mentioned (by us)' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing necessity (S2152)
 ἵνα...κατίδωμεν: *so that...may...*; purpose with 1p aor. subj. καθ-οράω
 15 ἐπαινετόν (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 16 οὐτε...οὔτε...(εἰσίν): *neither...nor...*
 17 τούτων: *of these*; i.e. of the three sets of means and extremes discussed
 17 τὰ πλείω: *the majority*; πλείω(ν)α, 'the

εὐ-τραπελία, ἡ: wit, ready wit, 1
 εὐ-τράπελος, -ον: witty, ready witted, 1
 ἵνα: in order that, so that (subj.); where, 3
 καθ-οράω: to perceive, look on, 1
 μείζον, μείζον: larger, greater, 4
 ὀνοματοποιέω: to create to name for, 1
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6
 παιδία, ἡ: amusement, childish play, 2
 πειρατέος, -α, -ον: to be attempted, 2
 προσ-ποίησις, -εως, ἡ: pretence, 1
 ῥητέος, -ον: to be said or mentioned, 2
 σαφηνεία, ἡ: clarity, distinctness, 1
 ψεκτός, -ής, -όν: blameworthy, 3
 more;' nom. subject
 πειρατέον (ἐστίν): see note for line 14
 18 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*
 σαφηνείας...εὐπαρακολουθήτου: both objs. of ἔνεκα
 20 ἀληθής τις (λεγέσθω): *a truthful person*; nom. pred.; supply verb from what follows
 λεγέσθω: *let...be called*; 'let...be said (to be)' 3s pres. pass. imperative
 21 ἡ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ μείζον: *with exaggeration*; 'to greater' an idiom that modifies προσποίησης in the attributive position
 ἀλαζονεία (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 22 αὐτὴν: i.e. ἀλαζονεία, obj. of ἔχων
 ἡ δ' ἐπὶ τὸ ἔλαττον (ἐστίν): *(the pretence) with understatement (is)*; 'to the lesser'
 23 περὶ...παιδιᾷ: *concerning pleasantness in amusement*

μολοχία καὶ ὁ ἔχων αὐτὴν βωμολόχος, ὁ δ' ἐλλείπων 25
 ἄγροικός τις καὶ ἡ ἔξις ἀγροικία· περὶ δὲ τὸ λοιπὸν ἡδὺ
 τὸ ἐν τῷ βίῳ ὁ μὲν ὡς δεῖ ἡδὺς ὢν φίλος καὶ ἡ μεσό-
 της φιλία, ὁ δ' ὑπερβάλλων, εἰ μὲν οὐδενὸς ἔνεκα, ἄρε-
 σκος, εἰ δ' ὠφελείας τῆς αὐτοῦ, κόλαξ, ὁ δ' ἐλλείπων
 καὶ ἐν πᾶσι ἀηδὴς δύσερίς τις καὶ δύσκολος. εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ 30
 ἐν τοῖς παθήμασι καὶ περὶ τὰ πάθη μεσότητες· ἡ γὰρ
 αἰδὼς ἀρετὴ μὲν οὐκ ἔστιν, ἐπαινεῖται δὲ καὶ ὁ αἰδήμων.
 καὶ γὰρ ἐν τούτοις ὁ μὲν λέγεται μέσος, ὁ δ' ὑπερβάλ-
 λων, ὡς ὁ καταπλήξ ὁ πάντα αἰδούμενος· ὁ δ' ἐλλείπων
 ἢ μηδὲν ὅλως ἀναίσχυντος, ὁ δὲ μέσος αἰδήμων. νέμε- 35

ἀγροικία, ἡ: coarseness, rustic manner, 1
 ἄγροικος, -ον: rustic, living in the country, 2
 ἀ-ηδής, -ές: unpleasant, disagreeable, 1
 αἰδέομαι: be ashamed, feel shame, 1
 αἰδήμων (-ονος), -ον: modest, 3
 αἰδώς, -όος, ἡ: sense of shame, 3
 ἀν-αίσχυντος, -ον: shameless, 2
 ἄρεσκος, -η, -ον: obsequious; pleasing, 1
 βίος, ὁ: life, 5
 βωμολόχος, ὁ: buffoon, beggar for scraps, 1

25 αὐτὴν: i.e. βωμολοχία, obj. of ἔχω
 βωμολόχος (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 ἄγροικός τις (ἐστίν)
 26 ἀγροικία (ἐστίν)
 ἡδὺ τὸ ἐν τῷ βίῳ: *pleasantness in life*; the
 third and final mean; see 1108a13-15
 27 ὁ...ὢν: *the one...*; nom. sg. pres. ppl. εἰμί
 ὡς δεῖ: *as he ought*
 φίλος (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 28 φιλία (ἐστίν)
 ἄρεσκος (ἐστίν)
 29 ὠφελείας (ἔνεκα): (*for the sake of*)...+
 preceding gen.
 τῆς (ἐ)αυτοῦ: *his own*; reflexive pronoun,
 in the attributive position with ὠφελείας
 ἐν πᾶσι: *in all circumstances*
 30 δύσερίς τις καὶ δύσκολος (ἐστίν): (*is*)
 someone...; nom. pred.
 εἰσὶ: *there are*

δύσ-ερισ, -δος ὁ, ἡ: quarrelsome 1
 δύσ-κολος, -όν: hard to please, 1
 κατα-πλήξ, -ήγος, ὁ: bashful (struck dumb), 1
 κόλαξ, κόλακος ὁ: flatterer, 1
 νέμεσις, ἡ: righteous indignation, 1
 πάθημα, -ατος, τό: suffering, misfortune, 1
 φιλία, ἡ: friendship, love, 2
 φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 3
 ὠφέλεια, ἡ: help, aid, benefit, 1

32 δὲ καὶ: *but in fact...*; adversative
 33 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
 ἐν τούτοις: *in these matters*; i.e. τὰ πάθη
 ὁ μὲν...ὁ δὲ: *one...another...*; 'this...that'
 the accented article ὁ indicates that the
 article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)
 λέγεται (εἶναι): supply inf.
 ὑπερβάλλων (λέγεται εἶναι): nom. pred.
 34 ὡς: *as for example...*;
 ὁ καταπλήξ: in apposition to ὑπερβάλλων
 ὁ αἰδούμενος: pres. mid. ppl. in the
 attributive position modifying ο καταπλήξ
 πάντα: *in all things*; acc. of respect
 35 μηδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc. ('has no any
 lacking'); μη is used instead of οὐ because
 the participle is conditional in sense
 ἀναίσχυντος (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 αἰδήμων (ἐστίν)

σις δὲ μεσότης φθόνου καὶ ἐπιχαιρεκακίας, εἰσὶ δὲ περὶ
 λύπην καὶ ἡδονὴν τὰς ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβαίνουσι τοῖς πέλας
 γινομένας· ὁ μὲν γὰρ νεμεσητικὸς λυπεῖται ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀνα-
 ξίως εὖ πράττουσιν, ὁ δὲ φθονερὸς ὑπερβάλλων τοῦτον ἐπὶ
 πᾶσι λυπεῖται, ὁ δ' ἐπιχαιρέκακος τοσοῦτον ἐλλείπει 5
 τοῦ λυπεῖσθαι ὥστε καὶ χαίρειν. ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τούτων καὶ
 ἄλλοθι καιρὸς ἔσται· περὶ δὲ δικαιοσύνης, ἐπεὶ οὐχ ἀπλῶς
 λέγεται, μετὰ ταῦτα διελόμενοι περὶ ἑκατέρας ἐροῦμεν
 πῶς μεσότητές εἰσιν· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν λογικῶν
 ἀρετῶν.

10

8. Τριῶν δὴ διαθέσεων οὓσων, δύο μὲν κακιῶν, τῆς μὲν
 καθ' ὑπερβολὴν τῆς δὲ κατ' ἔλλειψιν, μιᾶς δ' ἀρετῆς τῆς

ἄλλο-θι: in another place, elsewhere, 1

ἀν-αξίως: unworthily, 1

διά-θεσις, -εως ἡ: disposition, arrangement, 4

δι-αιρέω: to divide, distinguish, separate, 3

δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 1

δύο: two, 6

εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9

ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5

ἐπιχαιρεκακία, ἡ: joy over another's

misfortune, 2

ἐπιχαιρέκακος, -ον: rejoicing over another's
 misfortune, 1 spite

1 εἰσὶ: *they are*...; i.e. the emotions above

2 τὰς...γινομένας: *coming to be*; modifying
 fem. acc. λύπην καὶ ἡδονὴν collectively

ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβαίνουσι: *at what happens*; 'the
 things happening,' pres. pple; ἐπὶ + dat. is
 used to explain the reason for emotions
 (S1689.2c)

τοῖς πέλας: *to neighbors*; 'those nearby,'
 dat. of interest

3 ἐπὶ: *at*...; see note above

τοῖς...πράττουσιν: *those*...; i.e. being
 successful; dat. pple

4 τοῦτον: i.e. νεμεσητικὸς, obj. of pple
 ἐπὶ: *at*...

τοσοῦτον: inner acc.

6 τοῦ λυπεῖσθαι: *from being*...; articular inf.
 and gen. of separation

ὥστε: *so as*...;

καί: *actually, in fact*; adv.; ἐπιχαιρέκακος

καιρὸς, ὁ: (right) moment, occasion, time, 3

λογικός, -ή, -όν: intellectual, 1

μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7

νεμεσητικός, -ή, -όν: rightfully indignant, 1

πέλας: near, close; neighbor, other, 1

συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οῦτο: so great, so many, 3

τρεις, τρία: three, 2

φθονερὸς, -ά, -όν: envious, 1

φθόνος, ὁ: envy, 4

ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

contains the cognate of χαίρειν as a stem

7 ἔσται: *there will be*...; 3s fut. εἰμί; Aristotle
 postpones discussion of τὰ πάθη for later
 ἐπεὶ: *since*

οὐχ ἀπλῶς: not having just one meaning

8 μετὰ ταῦτα: *after these things*; i.e. in Book
 6, much later after the discussion

διελόμενοι: aor. mid. pple διαίρω

ἐροῦμεν: fut. λέγω (ἐρέω)

πῶς...εἰσὶν: ind. question

9 ὁμοίως...λογικῶν ἀρετῶν: Aristotle does
 not in fact consider the mean of intellectual
 virtues elsewhere in the N.E.

11 δῆ: *therefore, then*; inferential

Τριῶν...οὓσων: gen. abl. pres. pple εἰμί

Δύο μὲν...τῆς μὲν...τῆς δὲ...μιᾶς δ(ε): *two
 (being)...*, *one...the other...one (being)...*

partitive apposition to gen. abs.

12 κατ(ά)...: *in respect to*...

μεσότητος, πᾶσαι πάσαις ἀντίκεινταί πως· αἱ μὲν γὰρ
 ἄκραι καὶ τῇ μέσῃ καὶ ἀλλήλαις ἐναντία εἰσίν, ἡ δὲ
 μέση ταῖς ἀκραις· ὥσπερ γὰρ τὸ ἴσον πρὸς μὲν τὸ ἔλατ- 15
 τον μείζον πρὸς δὲ τὸ μείζον ἔλαττον, οὕτως αἱ μέσαι
 ἕξεις πρὸς μὲν τὰς ἐλλείψεις ὑπερβάλλουσι πρὸς δὲ τὰς
 ὑπερβολὰς ἐλλείπουσιν ἔν τε τοῖς πάθεσι καὶ ταῖς πρά-
 ξεισιν. ὁ γὰρ ἀνδρεῖος πρὸς μὲν τὸν δειλὸν θρασὺς φαίνε- 20
 ται, πρὸς δὲ τὸν θρασὺν δειλός· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ὁ σώφρων
 πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἀναίσθητον ἀκόλαστος, πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἀκόλαστον
 ἀναίσθητος, ὁ δ' ἐλευθέριος πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἀνελεύθερον ἄσω-
 τος, πρὸς δὲ τὸν ἄσωτον ἀνελεύθερος. διὸ καὶ ἀπωθοῦνται 24
 τὸν μέσον οἱ ἄκροι ἐκάτερος πρὸς ἐκάτερον, καὶ καλοῦσι

ἀλλήλων: one another, 8

ἀν-αισθητός, -όν: ascetic; insensible, 5

ἀν-ελεύθερος, -ον: ungenerous, stingy, 3

ἀντί-κειμαι: to be set against or opposite, 3

ἀπ-ωθέω: to push away, repel, reject, 1

ἄ-σωτος, -η, -ον: extravagant, wasteful, 3

13 πάσαις: dat. obj. of compound verb

ἐναντία: governs a dat.

15 ταῖς ἀκραις (ἐναντία ἐστίν): ellipsis

τὸ ἴσον: *the equal*

πρὸς: *in regard to...*

τὸ ἔλαττον: *the lesser*

16 μείζον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.

τὸ μείζον: *the lesser*

ἔλαττον (ἐστίν): pred., τὸ ἴσον is still subject

ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5

ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer, 5

ἐλευθέριος, -α, -ον: generous, liberal, 4

ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 6

καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 4

μείζων, μείζον: larger, greater, 4

17 πρὸς...: *in regard to...*

20 δειλός (φαίνεται): nom. pred.

21 ἀκόλαστος (φαίνεται): supply verb for the nom. pred. forms below

24 οἱ ἄκροι: *people at the extremes*

καλοῦσι: *call (x)(y)*; governs a double acc.

(acc. obj. and acc. pred.); the subjects ὁ μὲν

δειλός and ὁ δὲ θρασὺς are in partitive

apposition to the 3p subject

τὸν ἀνδρεῖον ὁ μὲν δειλὸς θρασὺν ὁ δὲ θρασὺς δειλόν, καὶ 25
ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀνάλογον. οὕτω δ' ἀντικειμένων ἀλλήλοις
τούτων, πλείστη ἐναντιότης ἐστὶ τοῖς ἄκροις πρὸς ἀλλήλα ἢ
πρὸς τὸ μέσον· πορρωτέρω γὰρ ταῦτα ἀφέστηκεν ἀλλήλων
ἢ τοῦ μέσου, ὥσπερ τὸ μέγα τοῦ μικροῦ καὶ τὸ μικρὸν
τοῦ μεγάλου ἢ ἁμῶς τοῦ ἴσου. ἔτι πρὸς μὲν τὸ μέσον 30
ἐνίοις ἄκροις ὁμοιότης τις φαίνεται, ὡς τῇ θρασύτητι πρὸς
τὴν ἀνδρείαν καὶ τῇ ἀσωτίᾳ πρὸς τὴν ἐλευθεριότητα· τοῖς
δὲ ἄκροις πρὸς ἀλλήλα πλείστη ἀνομοιότης· τὰ δὲ πλεῖ-
στον ἀπέχοντα ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἐναντία ὀρίζονται, ὥστε καὶ
μᾶλλον ἐναντία τὰ πλείον ἀπέχοντα. πρὸς δὲ τὸ μέσον 35

ἀλλήλων: one another, 8

ἁμῶς: both (dual), 8

ἀνά-λογος, -ον: proportionate, analogous, 2

ἀν-ομοιότης, ητος, ἡ: dissimilarity, 1

ἀντί-κειμαι: to be set against or opposite, 3

ἀ-σωτία, ἡ: prodigality, wastefulness, 2

ἀφ-ίστημι: set apart, remove; *mid.* withdraw 4

ἐλευθεριότης, -ητος, ὁ: generosity, liberality, 4

ἐναντιότης, ὁ: opposition, contrariety, 1

25 τὸν ἀνδρεῖον ὁ μὲν δειλὸς θρασὺν: i.e. ὁ
μὲν δειλὸς (καλεῖ) τὸν ἀνδρεῖον θρασὺν
ὁ δὲ θρασὺς (καλεῖ τὸν ἀνδρεῖον) δειλόν:
ellipsis

26 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

ἀνάλογον: *by analogy*; adv.: adverbial acc.

οὕτω...τούτων: gen. abs.

ἀλλήλοις: dat. obj. of compound verb

27 πλείστη: *the greatest*; 'most'

τοῖς ἄκροις: *for the extremes*; dat. of
interest or possession ('of...') as pred.

ἢ: *than*

28 πορρωτέρω: comparative adv. πόρρω

ταῦτα: *these (two)*; i.e. extremes, subject;

ἀφέστηκεν: *stand (away)*; i.e. 'are,' 3s pf.

ἀφίστημι with a neut. pl. subject

ἀλλήλων...μέσου: *from...*; gen. separation

ἢ: *than*

29 τοῦ μικροῦ, τοῦ μεγάλου, τοῦ ἴσου: all

gen. of separation; add verb ἀφέστηκεν

θρασύτης, -ητος, ἡ: rashness, over-boldness, 3

ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 6

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7

ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 4

ὀρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 6

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, greatest, 4

πόρρω: far, far from, 3

ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

30 πρὸς...μέσον: *to...*; closely after ὁμοιότης

ἐνίοις ἄκροις: *for...*; dat. of interest

31 ὥς: *as (for example)*; clause of comparison
τῇ θρασύτητι (ὁμοιότης τις φαίνεται):
for...; ellipsis; dat. of interest

32 τῇ ἀσωτίᾳ (ὁμοιότης τις φαίνεται):

for...; ellipsis; dat. of interest
τοῖς δὲ ἄκροις: *but for...*; dat. of interest

33 πλείστη: *the greatest*; 'most'

τὰ...ἀπέχοντα: *those...*; nom. subj.

πλείστον: *the most*; i.e. most apart; a
superlative adv.

34 ὀρίζονται (εἶναι): pres. pass. + nom. pred.

ὥστε...: *so that...*; result clause

καὶ μᾶλλον: *even more*; modifies ἐναντία

τὰ...ἀπέχοντα: *those...*; nom. subj.

πλείον: *more*; comparative adv.

35 πρὸς...: *in relation to...*

ἀντίκειται μᾶλλον ἐφ' ὧν μὲν ἡ ἔλλειψις ἐφ' ὧν δὲ ἡ
 ὑπερβολή, οἷον ἀνδρεία μὲν οὐχ ἡ θρασύτης ὑπερβολή
 οὖσα, ἀλλ' ἡ δειλία ἔλλειψις οὖσα, τῇ δὲ σωφροσύνῃ
 οὐχ ἡ ἀναισθησία ἔνδεια οὖσα, ἀλλ' ἡ ἀκολασία ὑπερ-
 βολή οὖσα. διὰ δύο δ' αἰτίας τοῦτο συμβαίνει, μίαν 5
 μὲν τὴν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος· τῷ γὰρ ἐγγύτερον εἶναι
 καὶ ὁμοιότερον τὸ ἕτερον ἄκρον τῷ μέσῳ, οὐ τοῦτο ἀλλὰ
 τοῦναντίον ἀντιτίθεμεν μᾶλλον· οἷον ἐπεὶ ὁμοιότερον εἶναι
 δοκεῖ τῇ ἀνδρείᾳ ἡ θρασύτης καὶ ἐγγύτερον, ἀνομοιότερον
 δ' ἡ δειλία, ταύτην μᾶλλον ἀντιτίθεμεν· τὰ γὰρ ἀπέ- 10
 χοντα πλείον τοῦ μέσου ἐναντιώτερα δοκεῖ εἶναι. μία μὲν
 οὖν αἰτία αὕτη, ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος· ἑτέρα δὲ ἐξ ἡμῶν

αἰτία, ἡ: reason, cause, responsibility, 7

ἀν-αισθησία, ἡ: insensibility, 2

ἀν-όμοιος, -ον: unlike, dissimilar, 1

ἀντί-κειμαι: to be set against or opposite, 3

ἀντι-τίθημι: to set against, 2

δειλία, ἡ: cowardice, 4

δύο: two, 6

ἐγγύς: near to (+ gen.); *adv.* nearby, 3

εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9

ἔν-δεια, ἡ: lack, want, 3

θρασύτης, -ητος, ἡ: rashness, over-boldness, 3

ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7

πρᾶγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 7

συμ-βαίνει: to happen, occur, result, 8

1 ἐ(πι) ὧν μὲν... ἐ(πι) ὧν δὲ: *in some cases*
...in other cases.

2 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 ἀνδρεία μὲν: *for...*; dat. of interest
 ἡ θρασύτης (ἀντίκειται μᾶλλον)
 ὑπερβολή οὖσα: *by...*; causal pres. pple εἰμί

3 ἡ δειλία (ἀντίκειται μᾶλλον)
 ἔλλειψις οὖσα: *by...*; causal pres. pple εἰμί
 τῇ δὲ σωφροσύνῃ...οὖσα: *but for...*; for
 grammar, see the notes for ll. 2-3 above

5 (διὰ) μίαν μὲν (αἰτίαν): (*for*) one (reason);
 the second reason mentioned in ll. 11-12

6 τὴν αὐτοῦ τοῦ πράγματος: in attributive
 position modifying (αἰτίαν); αὐτοῦ is
 intensive

τῷ γὰρ ἐγγύτερον...ἄκρον τῷ μέσῳ:
because of one extreme being...; a lengthy
 articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause; τὸ
 ἄκρον is acc. subj.

7 τῷ μέσῳ: to...; dat. of special adj., in this
 case both the comparative adjs.

τοῦτο: i.e. the extreme nearer to the mean

8 τ(ὸ) ἐναντίον: i.e. extreme farther away
 ἀντιτίθεμεν: *we set opposite (to the mean)*

οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 ὁμοιότερον, ἐγγύτερον: both neuter nom.
 pred. because they refer to τὸ ἄκρον

9 ἀνομοιότερον (εἶναι δοκεῖ): nom. pred.,
 neut. sg. referring to τὸ ἄκρον

10 ταύτην: i.e. ἡ δειλία

ἀντιτίθεμεν: *we set opposite (to the mean)*

10 τὰ...ἀπέχοντα: *those...*; nom. subj.

πλείον: *more*; comparative adv. modifying
 τὰ ἀπέχοντα

11 τοῦ μέσου: *from...*; abl. of separation
 governed by ἀπέχοντα

μία...αὕτη (ἐστίν): *this (is)...*; the end of the
 description started in line 5

12 ἑτέρα (αἰτία ἐστίν) δὲ ἐξ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν: *the*
other (reason is)...; ellipsis; i.e. the second
 of two reasons mentioned in line 5

αὐτῶν· πρὸς ᾧ γὰρ αὐτοὶ μᾶλλον πεφύκαμέν πως, ταῦτα
 μᾶλλον ἐναντία τῷ μέσῳ φαίνεται. οἷον αὐτοὶ μᾶλλον
 πεφύκαμεν πρὸς τὰς ἡδονάς, διὸ εὐκαταφορώτεροί ἐσμεν 15
 πρὸς ἀκολασίαν ἢ πρὸς κοσμιότητα. ταῦτ' οὖν μᾶλ-
 λον ἐναντία λέγομεν, πρὸς ᾧ ἡ ἐπίδοσις μᾶλλον γίνεται·
 καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἡ ἀκολασία ὑπερβολὴ οὖσα ἐναντιωτέρα
 ἐστὶ τῇ σωφροσύνῃ.

9. ὅτι μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ ἀρετὴ ἡ ἠθικὴ μεσότης, καὶ πῶς, 20
 καὶ ὅτι μεσότης δύο κακίων, τῆς μὲν κατ' ὑπερβολὴν τῆς
 δὲ κατ' ἔλλειψιν, καὶ ὅτι τοιαύτη ἐστὶ διὰ τὸ στοχαστικὴ
 τοῦ μέσου εἶναι τοῦ ἐν τοῖς πάθεσι καὶ ἐν ταῖς πράξεσιν, ἰκα-
 νῶς εἴρηται. διὸ καὶ ἔργον ἐστὶ σπουδαῖον εἶναι. ἐν ἐκάστῳ 24

δύο: two, 6

ἐπί-δοσις, -εως ἢ: progress, advance, 1

εὐ-κατάφορος: easily prone or inclined, 2

ἠθικός, -ή, -όν: ethical, moral, 6

13 πρὸς ᾧ: *to which...*; or 'in regard to...' the
 antecedent is the nom. pl. ταῦτα

αὐτοὶ: intensive modifying 1p subject

πεφύκαμεν: *we are disposed by nature*;

'have grown by nature' pf. act. pple φύω

14 τῷ μέσῳ: *to...*; dat. of special adj.

οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'

αὐτοὶ...πεφύκαμεν: see not above

ἐσμεν: 1p pres. εἰμί

16 ταῦτα (εἶναι): *that these (are)...*; ind. disc.

ἐναντία: *opposite (to the mean)*

17 πρὸς ᾧ...γίνεται: *toward which*

momentum occurs more (for us); ταῦτα

is the antecedent

18 ὑπερβολὴ οὖσα: pple εἰμί

19 τῇ σωφροσύνῃ: dat. of special adj.

20 ὅτι: *that...*; a series of ind. disc. and

questions governed by εἴρηται, pf. pass.

ικανῶς: sufficiently, adequately, 1

κοσμιότης, -ητος, ἢ: orderliness, propriety, 1

σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9

στοχαστικός, -ή, -όν: able to aim and hit, 3

λέγω in line 24

ἡ ἠθικὴ: adj. in attributive position

modifying ἀρετή, not the pred. μεσότης

πῶς: ind. question, supply entire clause

from the previous ὅτι clause

21 μεσότης (ἡ ἀρετὴ ἐστίν): ellipsis

τῆς μὲν...τῆς δὲ: *one...the other*; partitive

apposition to gen. pl. κακίων

κατ(ά)...: *in respect to...*

22 τὸ...εἶναι: articular inf. (-ing)

στοχαστικὴ: nom. pred. of εἶναι + gen.

23 τοῦ ἐν τοῖς...πράξεσιν: prepositional

phrases in attributive position modifying

τοῦ μέσου, the gen. obj. of στοχαστικὴ

24 εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)

ἔργον: *the task*; i.e. the challenge

σπουδαῖον εἶναι: *to be good*; inf. as subject

ἐν ἐκάστῳ: *in each thing*; i.e. in everything

γὰρ τὸ μέσον λαβεῖν ἔργον, οἷον κύκλου τὸ μέσον οὐ παν- 25
 τὸς ἀλλὰ τοῦ εἰδότος· οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὸ μὲν ὀργισθῆναι παν-
 τὸς καὶ ῥάδιον, καὶ τὸ δοῦναι ἀργύριον καὶ δαπανῆσαι·
 τὸ δ' ᾧ καὶ ὅσον καὶ ὅτε καὶ οὗ ἔνεκα καὶ ὥς, οὐκέτι παν-
 τὸς οὐδὲ ῥάδιον· διόπερ τὸ εὖ καὶ σπάνιον καὶ ἐπαινετὸν καὶ
 καλόν. διὸ δεῖ τὸν στοχαζόμενον τοῦ μέσου πρῶτον μὲν 30
 ἀποχωρεῖν τοῦ μᾶλλον ἐναντίου, καθάπερ καὶ ἡ Καλυψὼ
 παραινεί

τούτου μὲν καπνοῦ καὶ κύματος ἐκτὸς ἔργε

νήα.

(Od. 12.219)

τῶν γὰρ ἄκρων τὸ μὲν ἐστὶν ἁμαρτωλότερον τὸ δ' ἦττον· 33
 ἐπεὶ οὖν τοῦ μέσου τυχεῖν ἄκρως χαλεπόν, κατὰ τὸν δεύ-
 τερον, φασί, πλοῦν τὰ ἐλάχιστα ληπτέον τῶν κακῶν· τοῦτο 35

ἄκρως: extremely, utterly, 1

ἁμαρτωλός, -όν: mistaken, erroneous, 1

ἀπο-χωρέω: go from, depart, 1

ἀργύριον, τό: silver piece, silver coin, 1

δαπανάω: to spend, consume, use up, 1

δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second, 1

δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 1

διόπερ: for which very reason, 3

ἐκτός: outside; out of, far from (+ gen.), 3

ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: least; smallest, 1

ἐπαινετός, -η, -ον: praiseworthy, 4

ἐργω (ἐέργω): to shut in, enclose, 1

25 τό μέσον λαβεῖν: to achieve the middle;

inf. subject; aor. inf. λαμβάνω

ἔργον (ἐστίν): is the task; i.e. the challenge

οἷον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'

κύκλου τὸ μέσον (λαβεῖν): add inf. above

οὐ παντός ἀλλὰ τοῦ εἰδότος: (is) not of

everyone but of one who knows; 'belongs

not to everyone but to the one who knows'

gen. possession as pred. (S1304); pple οἶδα

26 τὸ ὀργισθῆναι (ἐστίν): articular inf., aor.

pass. inf. ὀργίζω; add linking verb

παντός: of everyone; 'belongs to everyone'

27 τὸ δοῦναι...δαπανῆσαι (ἐστίν παντός καὶ

ῥάδιον): nom. sg. articular inf., aor. inf.

δίδωμι and δαπανάω; add verb and pred.

28 τὸ δ' ᾧ (δεῖ)...ὥς: to (do this) to whom

(one ought) and to the extent (one ought)

and when (one ought) and for the sake of

καθ-άπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6

Καλυψὼ, ἡ: Calypso, 1 καπνός, ὁ: smoke, 1

κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, ring; circumstances, 2

κῦμα, -ατος, τό: wave; flood, 2

ληπτέος, -ον: to be taken or received, 3

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ: a ship, boat, 1

οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4

παραίνω, ὁ: to advise, recommend, 1

πλόος (πλοῦς) ὁ: sailing, voyage, 1

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7

σπάνιος, -α, -ον: scarce, rare, 1

στοχαζομαι: to aim at (gen) 1

which (one ought) and how (one ought); an

articular inf. (verb missing) with multiple

clauses in the attributive position; add δεῖ

(ἐστίν) οὐκέτι παντός οὐδὲ ῥάδιον: see l. 25

29 τὸ εὖ (ἐστίν): the good (is)

τὸν στοχαζόμενον...ἀποχωρεῖν: that the

one...; ind. disc.

31 τοῦ μᾶλλον ἐναντίου: from...; separation

τούτου...νήα: keep the ship out beyond this

spray and surf; to Odysseus: steer away

from Charybdis and closer to Scylla

33 τὸ μὲν...τὸ δεῖ: one..the other...

ἦττον (ἁμαρτωλόν): less...; adv.

34 τυχεῖν: to attain + partitive gen.

χαλεπόν (ἐστίν): (it is)...; impersonal

κατὰ...: in accordance with the 2nd best way

to sail, as they say; i.e. oars when wind dies

35 ληπτέον (ἐστίν): we must take; cf. 1107a32

δ' ἔσται μάλιστα τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον ὃν λέγομεν. σκοπεῖν δὲ
 δεῖ πρὸς ᾧ καὶ αὐτοὶ εὐκατάφοροί ἐσμεν· ἄλλοι γὰρ
 πρὸς ἄλλα πεφύκαμεν· τοῦτο δ' ἔσται γνώριμον ἐκ τῆς
 ἡδονῆς καὶ τῆς λύπης τῆς γινομένης περὶ ἡμᾶς. εἰς τούναν-
 τίον δ' ἑαυτοὺς ἀφέλκειν δεῖ· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπάγοντες τοῦ 5
 ἁμαρτάνειν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἤξομεν, ὅπερ οἱ τὰ διεστραμμένα
 τῶν ξύλων ὀρθοῦντες ποιοῦσιν. ἐν παντὶ δὲ μάλιστα φυλα-
 κτέον τὸ ἡδὺ καὶ τὴν ἡδονήν· οὐ γὰρ ἀδέκαστοι κρίνομεν
 αὐτήν. ὅπερ οὖν οἱ δημογέροντες ἔπαθον πρὸς τὴν Ἑλένην,
 τοῦτο δεῖ παθεῖν καὶ ἡμᾶς πρὸς τὴν ἡδονήν, καὶ ἐν πᾶσι 10
 τὴν ἐκείνων ἐπιλέγειν φωνήν· οὕτω γὰρ αὐτὴν ἀποπεμπό-
 μενοι ἦττον ἁμαρτησόμεθα. ταῦτ' οὖν ποιοῦντες, ὥς ἐν

ἀ-δέκαστος, -ον: impartial, unbribed, 1

ἀπ-άγω: to lead away, carry off, 1

ἀπο-πέμπω: to send away, dismiss, 1

ἀφ-έλκω: to drag away, 1

γνώριμος, -ον: known, recognizable, 2

δημο-γέρων, -οντος ὁ: elder (of the people), 1

δια-στρέφω: twist, bend (in different ways), 1

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8

Ἑλένη, ἡ: Helen, 1

ἐπι-λέγω: to speak on, attribute, apply, 2

εὐ-κατάφορος: easily prone or inclined, 2

ἦκω: to have come, be present, 3

κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6

ξύλον, τό: wood, 1

ὀρθόω: to set upright, straighten, 1

ὅπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9

σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5

τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5

φυλακτέος, -ον: to be watched or guarded, 1

φωνή, ἡ: sound; speech, voice, 3

1 τοῦτο δὲ (ληπτεόν) ἔσται...λέγομεν: *this will certainly have to be taken up in this way which we are saying*; verbal adj from the previous clause + fut. εἰμί expressing necessity; τὸν τρόπον is an adverbial acc.

2 πρὸς ᾧ: *in regard to what...*

αὐτοί: intensive modifying 1p subject

ἐσμεν: 1p pres. εἰμί

ἄλλοι πρὸς ἄλλα: *some (of us)...to some (vices), others (of us)...to other (vices)*

3 πεφύκαμεν: *are disposed by nature*; 'have grown by nature' 1p pf. act. pplle φύω ἔσται: fut. εἰμί

4 περὶ ἡμᾶς: i.e. that we feel

το (ἐ)ναντιον: i.e. opposite extreme

5 ἑαυτοὺς: *ourselves*; 'themselves,' the reflexive refers to ἄλλοι but is 1p in sense πολὺ ἀπάγοντες: *by drawing far away*; adverbial acc.; pres. pplle is causal in sense τοῦ ἁμαρτάνειν: *from...*; articular inf. and

gen. of separation; i.e. the extreme

ἤξομεν: fut. ἦκω

6 ὅπερ: *just as*; 'which very thing'

οἱ...ὀρθοῦντες: *those...*; i.e. a carpenter

τὰ διεστραμμένα: *the warped parts*; pf. pass. pplle

7 ἐν παντί: *in everything*

φυλακτέον (ἐστίν): *(we) must...*; '(it is) to be...(by us)' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing necessity, often translated actively; adj. governs an acc. obj. (S2152)

8 τὸ ἡδὺ: *the pleasant*; or 'what is pleasant'

9 ὅπερ: *just as*; 'which very thing'

ἔπαθον: aor. πάσχω, 'experience' or 'feel'

10 παθεῖν: aor. inf. πάσχω

καί: *also, too*; adv.

ἐπιλέγειν φωνήν: *(that we) apply their words*; '(speak) in addition to (acting)'

12 ἦττον: comparative adv. ἦττων

κεφαλαίῳ εἰπεῖν, μάλιστα δυνησόμεθα τοῦ μέσου τυγχάνειν.
χαλεπὸν δ' ἴσως τοῦτο, καὶ μάλιστ' ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστον· οὐ
γὰρ ῥάδιον διορίσαι καὶ πῶς καὶ τίσι καὶ ἐπὶ ποίοις καὶ πό- 15
σον χρόνον ὀργιστέον· καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ὅτε μὲν τοὺς ἐλλείπον-
τας ἐπαινοῦμεν καὶ πράους φαμέν, ὅτε δὲ τοὺς χαλεπαί-
νοντας ἀνδρώδεις ἀποκαλοῦντες. ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν μικρὸν τοῦ εὖ
παρεκβαίνων οὐ ψέγεται, οὔτ' ἐπὶ τὸ μᾶλλον οὔτ' ἐπὶ τὸ
ἥττον, ὁ δὲ πλέον· οὗτος γὰρ οὐ λανθάνει. ὁ δὲ μέχρι τίνος 20
καὶ ἐπὶ πόσον ψεκτὸς οὐ ῥάδιον τῷ λόγῳ ἀφορίσαι· οὐδὲ
γὰρ ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν αἰσθητῶν· τὰ δὲ τοιαῦτα ἐν τοῖς καθ'
ἕκαστα, καὶ ἐν τῇ αἰσθήσει ἢ κρίσις. τὸ μὲν ἄρα τοσοῦτο
δηλοῖ ὅτι ἡ μέση ἔξις ἐν πᾶσι ἐπαινετὴ, ἀποκλίνειν δὲ 24

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7
αἰσθητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible, sensible, 1
ἀνδρώδης, -ες: manly, like a man, 1
ἀπο-καλέω: to call by name, disparage, 1
ἀπο-κλίνω: to turn off or aside, incline, 1
ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 6
ἀφ-ορίζω: to define, mark off, 3
δηλόω: to make clear, show; *intr.* is clear, 1
δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, determine, 6
δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 9
ἐπαινετός, -η, -ον: praiseworthy, 4
κεφάλαιον, τό: main point, sum, gist, 2
κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: decision, judgment, 2

λανθάνω: to escape notice; *pass.* forget, 1
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 2
ὀργιστέος, -ον: to be angered, made angry, 1
ὅτε: sometimes, at times (ποτέ), 9
παρεκβαίνω: to deviate, step aside, 1
πόσος, -α, -ον: how much, many or great, 4
πρᾶος, -ον: gentle, mild, 3
ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7
τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so many, 3
χαλεπαίνω: to be sore, angry, grievous, 1
χρόνος, ὁ: time, 3
ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8
ψεκτός, -ή, -όν: blameworthy, 3

13 ὥς...εἰπεῖν: *so as to speak in sum*
τυγχάνειν: *to attain + partitive gen.*
14 χαλεπὸν (ἐστίν)
ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστον: *in particular cases;*
'in those each by each'
ῥάδιον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; *impers. + aor. inf.*
15 καὶ πῶς...ὀριστεόν: *a series of ind.*
questions all using the verb ὀριστεόν ἐστίν
τίσι: *with whom;* *dat. pl. τίς of association*
ἐπὶ ποίοις: *on what sort of terms*
πόσον χρόνον: *for...;* *acc. of duration*
ὀριστεόν (ἐστίν): *(we) must...;* *'(it is) to*
be...(by us)' *impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί;*
this verbal adj. governs an acc. obj. (S2152)
16 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
ὅτε μὲν...ὅτε δὲ: *sometimes...sometimes*
17 φαμέν: *we call (them)...*; *pres. φημί with a*
double acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.

τοὺς χαλεπαίνοντας (ἐπαινοῦμεν): *ellipsis*
18 ἀποκαλοῦντες: *calling (them) (y)*
ὁ μὲν...παρεκβαίνων: *the one...;* *pres. ppl*
μικρὸν: *a little;* *inner acc. (slight deviation)*
τοῦ εὖ: *from the good;* *separation*
19 οὔτε...οὔτε...: *neither...nor...*
ἐπὶ...: *toward...;* *in the direction of...*
ὁ δὲ πλέον (παρεκβαίνων ψέγεται): *but...;*
heavy ellipsis: πλέον is an inner acc.
20 ὁ δὲ...ψεκτός: *Up to what point and for*
how long (one must deviate before he is)
the one blameworthy; *ind. question*
ῥάδιον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; *impers. + aor. inf.*
τῷ λόγῳ: *with...;* *abl. of means*
21 οὐδὲ...: *nor (is it easy to define) any other*
22 τὰ τοιαῦτα: *such (depend) on particulars*
23 ἡ κρίσις: *the decision (depends) on...*
24 δημοῖ: *is clear (namely) that...;* *3s δηλόω*

δεῖ ὅτε μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν ὅτε δ' ἐπὶ τὴν ἔλλειψιν 25
οὕτω γὰρ ῥᾶστα τοῦ μέσου καὶ τοῦ εὖ τευξόμεθα.

ΗΘΙΚΩΝ ΝΙΚΟΜΑΧΕΙΩΝ Γ

1. Τῆς ἀρετῆς δὴ περὶ πάθη τε καὶ πράξεις οὕσης, καὶ 30
ἐπὶ μὲν τοῖς ἐκουσίοις ἐπαίνων καὶ ψόγων γινομένων, ἐπὶ
δὲ τοῖς ἀκουσίοις συγγνώμης, ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ἐλέου, τὸ ἐκού-
σιον καὶ τὸ ἀκούσιον ἀναγκαῖον ἴσως διορίσαι τοῖς περὶ ἀρετῆς
ἐπισκοποῦσι, χρήσιμον δὲ καὶ τοῖς νομοθετοῦσι πρὸς τε τὰς
τιμὰς καὶ τὰς κολάσεις. δοκεῖ δὴ ἀκούσια εἶναι τὰ βία 35

ἀκούσιος, -ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 3
βία, βίαις, ἡ: compulsion, force, 4
δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, 6
ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8
ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 3
ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, from time to time, 4
ἔπαινος, ὁ: praise, approval, commendation, 3
ἐπι-σκοπέω: to consider, examine, 2

25 ὅτε μὲν...ὅτε δ(ἐ): *sometimes...sometimes*
ἐπὶ...: *to..., in the direction of...*

26 τευξόμεθα: fut. mid. τυγχάνω + partitive
gen.

30 Τῆς ἀρετῆς...οὕσης: gen. abs.

31 ἐπὶ...ἐκουσίοις: *in voluntary (actions)*

ἐπαίνων...γινομένων: gen. abs.

ἐπὶ...ἀκουσίοις: *in involuntary (actions)*

32 συγγνώμης (γινομένης)...ἐλέου
(γινομένου): gen. abs., supply the pples
καί: *even*

τὸ ἐκούσιον: *Voluntary*

τὸ ἀκούσιον: *Involuntary*

κόλασις, -εως, ὁ: punishment, corrections, 2
νομο-θετέω: to make laws, 2
ὅτε: sometimes, at times (ποτέ), 9
ῥᾶστα: most easily, 2
συγ-γνώμη, ἡ: forgiveness, pardon, 3
τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8
χρήσιμος, -η, -ον: useful, serviceable, 1
ψόγος, ὁ: blame, censure, 2

33 ἀναγκαῖον (ἐστὶ): *(it is)...*; impersonal +
aor. inf.

τοῖς...ἐπισκοποῦσι: *for those...*; dat. pl. of
interest, pres. pple

34 χρήσιμον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; impersonal

τοῖς νομοθετοῦσι: *for those...*; dat. pl. of
interest, pres. pple

πρὸς: *in regard to...*

35 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

ἀκούσια: *involuntary (actions)*; neut. pl.
subj. of 3s verb

τὰ...γινομένα is acc. subj.

βίᾳ: *because of*; abl. of cause

ἢ δι' ἄγνοιαν γινόμενα· βίαιον δὲ οὐ ἡ ἀρχὴ ἔξωθεν, τοι-
 αὐτῇ οὕσα ἐν ἣ μὴδὲν συμβάλλεται ὁ πράττων ἢ ὁ πά-
 σχων, οἷον εἰ πνεῦμα κομίσαι ποι ἢ ἄνθρωποι κύριοι ὄν-
 τες. ὅσα δὲ διὰ φόβον μειζόνων κακῶν πράττεται ἢ διὰ
 καλόν τι, οἷον εἰ τύραννος προστάττοι αἰσχρόν τι πρᾶξι 5
 κύριος ὢν γονέων καὶ τέκνων, καὶ πράξαντος μὲν σώζοντο
 μὴ πράξαντος δ' ἀποθνήσκοιεν, ἀμφισβήτησιν ἔχει πότερον
 ἀκούσιά ἐστιν ἢ ἐκούσια. τοιοῦτον δέ τι συμβαίνει καὶ περὶ
 τὰς ἐν τοῖς χειμῶσιν ἐκβολάς· ἀπλῶς μὲν γὰρ οὐδεὶς ἀπο-
 βάλλεται ἐκὼν, ἐπὶ σωτηρίᾳ δ' αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν 10
 ἅπαντες οἱ νοῦν ἔχοντες. μικταὶ μὲν οὖν εἰσιν αἱ τοιαῦται
 πράξεις, ἐοίκασιν δὲ μάλλον ἐκουσίοις· αἵρεται γὰρ εἰσι

ἀμφισβήτησις, -εως ἢ: dispute, controversy, 1
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
 ἀπο-βάλλω: to throw away, 1
 ἀπο-θνήσκω: to die, die off, perish, 4
 βίαιος, -α, -ον: compulsory, forcible, 6
 γονεὺς, -έως, ὁ: a begetter, parent, 1
 ἐκ-βολή, ἡ: outlet; a casting out, ejection, 1
 ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8
 ἐκὼν, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: voluntarily, willing, 8
 ἔξω-θεν: from without, 2
 κομίζω: to convey, carry; travel, journey, 2
 μειζων, μειζον: larger, greater, 4
 μικτός, -ή, -όν: mixed, 1

νοῦς, ὁ: sense; mind, attention, 4
 πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: breath, wind, blast, 1
 ποι: to somewhere, somewhere, 1
 πότερος, -α, -ον: whether, which (of two)? 5
 προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5
 συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
 συμ-βάλλω: to contribute; join in battle, 3
 σώζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4
 σωτηρία, ἡ: preservation, saving a life, 5
 τέκνον, τό: a child, 2
 τύραννος, ὁ: sovereign, tyrant, 1
 φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8
 χειμῶν, -ώνος, ὁ: winter, stormy weather, 1

1 βίαιον (ἐστίν): *A compulsory act (is);*
 οὐ ἡ ἀρχὴ (ἐστίν) ἔξωθεν: *(that) whose*
origin...; relative clause; the missing
antecedent is nom. pred.
 2 οὕσα: pple εἰμί modifying ἀρχή
 μὴδὲν: *nothing at all; inner acc.*
 ἢ ὁ πάσχων: *or (actually) the one...; pple,*
 Aristotle is simply clarifying ὁ πράττων
 and not including a second, distinct person
 3 οἷον: *for example; 'in respect to which sort'*
 εἰ πνεῦμα...ὄντες.: *if the wind or men being*
in power should convey (someone); i.e. in a
ship; 3s aor. opt. κομίζω
 4 ὅσα...πράττεται: *but as many (actions)*
as...; relative clause with no antecedent;
neut. pl. subj. and 3s pass. verb
 5 οἷον: *for example; 'in respect to which sort'*
 προστάττοι: *should order (a man); 3s*

pres. opt.; supply the obj.
 πράξει: aor. inf. πράττω
 6 κύριος: *in power over + gen.; nom. pred. of*
pres. pple εἰμί; i.e. over the man's family
 πράξαντος: *(if the man)...; gen. abs.*
conditional in sense
 σώζοντο: *they should be...; 3p pass. opt.*
 7 μὴ πράξαντος: *(if the man)...; gen. abs.*
conditional in sense
 ἀποθνήσκοιεν: *they should...; 3p pres. opt.*
 ἔχει: *there is...*
 πότερον...ἢ: *whether...or...; ind. question*
 8 καὶ περὶ τὰς...ἐκβολάς: *also concerning*
cargo cast out in a storm; i.e. in a ship
 10 ἐπὶ σωτηρίᾳ δέ: *but for the safety...*
 αὐτοῦ: *his own; ἐαυτοῦ, reflexive*
 11 ἅπαντες...ἔχοντες: *all having sense*
(would do so); i.e. throw off cargo

τότε ὅτε πράττονται, τὸ δὲ τέλος τῆς πράξεως κατὰ τὸν
 καιρὸν ἐστίν. καὶ τὸ ἐκούσιον δὴ καὶ τὸ ἀκούσιον, ὅτε πράτ-
 τει, λεκτέον. πράττει δὲ ἐκών· καὶ γὰρ ἡ ἀρχὴ τοῦ κινεῖν 15
 τὰ ὀργανικὰ μέρη ἐν ταῖς τοιαύταις πράξεσιν ἐν αὐτῷ
 ἐστίν· ὦν δ' ἐν αὐτῷ ἡ ἀρχή, ἐπ' αὐτῷ καὶ τὸ πράττειν
 καὶ μή. ἐκούσια δὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα, ἀπλῶς δ' ἴσως ἀκούσια·
 οὐδεὶς γὰρ ἂν ἔλοιτο καθ' αὐτὸ τῶν τοιούτων οὐδέν. ἐπὶ ταῖς
 πράξεσι δὲ ταῖς τοιαύταις ἐνίοτε καὶ ἐπαινοῦνται, ὅταν 20
 αἰσχροὺν τι ἢ λυπηρὸν ὑπομένωσιν ἀντὶ μεγάλων καὶ κα-
 λῶν· ἂν δ' ἀνάπαλιν, ψέγονται· τὰ γὰρ αἰσχισθ' ὑπομεί-
 ναι ἐπὶ μηδενὶ καλῷ ἢ μετρίῳ φαύλου. ἐπ' ἐνίοις δ' ἐπαι-
 νος μὲν οὐ γίνεται, συγγνώμη δ', ὅταν διὰ τοιαῦτα πράξῃ 24

αἰσχιστος, -ή, -όν: most shameful, 1
 ἀκούσιος, -ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
 ἀνά-παλιν: in the opposite way, back again, 5
 ἀντὶ: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8
 ἐκών, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: voluntarily, willing, 8
 ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, from time to time, 4
 ἔπαινος, ὁ: praise, approval, commendation, 3
 καιρός, ὁ: (right) moment, occasion, time, 3
 κινέω: to set in motion, move, 4
 λεκτέος, -ον: to be called or said, 2

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7
 μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
 μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, well, fair, 2
 ὀργανικός, -ά, -όν: instrumental, 1
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 7
 συγ-γνώμη, ἡ: forgiveness, pardon, 3
 τότε: then, at that time, 3
 φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8
 ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8

13 κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐστίν: *varies according to the occasion*
 14 καὶ τὸ ἐκούσιον...λεκτέον (ἐστίν): *therefore (an action) must be called Voluntary and Involuntary (at the time) when one does it; 'it is to be called...' λεκτέον is a verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing necessity; δὴ is inferential*
 15 πράττει δὲ ἐκών: *and (in this case) he...; Aristotle returns to the example in II. 9-12*
 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
 ἡ ἀρχή: *the source*
 τοῦ κινεῖν: *articular inf. (-ing)*
 16 τὰ ὀργανικὰ μέρη: *bodily members; acc. ἐν αὐτῷ: in him; i.e. the subject of πράττει*
 17 ὦν...ἡ ἀρχή (ἐστίν): *(when) the source of these (is)...*; 'source of which,' a connective relative whose antecedent is ταῖς πράξεσιν
 ἐπ(ί) αὐτῷ: *(it is) in his power...; 'in him' καὶ...καὶ...: both...and...*
 18 τὰ τοιαῦτα (ἐστίν)
 δὴ: *therefore, then; inferential*

ἀπλῶς: *i.e. without qualification*
 19 ἂν ἔλοιτο: *potential aor. mid. opt. αἰρέω καθ' (ἐ)αυτὸ: in itself*
 οὐδέν: *any; following negative οὐδεὶς ἐπὶ...: in...*
 20 ταῖς τοιαύταις: *in attributive position modifying πράξεις*
 καὶ ἐπαινοῦνται: *(people) are even praised*
 ὅταν...ὑπομένωσιν: *whenever...; general temporal clause with pres. subj.; the subject remains 'people' in general*
 21 ἀντὶ: *in return for...; or 'for the sake of...'*
 22 (ἐ)ὰν δ' ἀνάπαλιν: *if in the opposite way; i.e. if not for something great and noble*
 τὰ αἰσχιστ(ά): *acc. obj.*
 ὑπομείναι: *aor. inf. subject*
 23 ἐπὶ: *for...; expressing purpose*
 φαύλου: *(is) contemptible; 'of inferior quality' gen. of quality as pred.*
 ἐπὶ ἐνίοις: *in some actions*
 24 πράξῃ: *someone does; 3s aor. subj.*

τις ἂ μὴ δεῖ, ἂ τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην φύσιν ὑπερτείνει καὶ μη- 25
 δεῖς ἂν ὑπομεῖναι. ἓνια δ' ἴσως οὐκ ἔστιν ἀναγκασθῆναι,
 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀποθανετέον παθόντι τὰ δεινότατα· καὶ
 γὰρ τὸν Εὐριπίδου Ἀλκμαίωνα γελοῖα φαίνεται τὰ ἀναγ-
 κάσαντα μητροκτονῆσαι. ἔστι δὲ χαλεπὸν ἐνίστε διακρίναι
 ποῖον ἀντὶ ποίου αἰρετέον καὶ τί ἀντὶ τίνος ὑπομενετέον, ἔτι 30
 δὲ χαλεπώτερον ἐμμεῖναι τοῖς γνωσθεῖσιν· ὥς γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ
 πολὺ ἔστι τὰ μὲν προσδοκώμενα λυπηρά, ἂ δ' ἀναγκάζον-
 ται αἰσχροῖα, ὅθεν ἔπαινοι καὶ ψόγοι γίνονται περὶ τοὺς

αἰρετέος, -ον: to be chosen, 2

Ἀλκμαίων, ὁ: Alcmaeon, 1

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 8

ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: human, of a human, 2

ἀντὶ: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8

ἀπο-θανετέος, -ον: to be died off; must die, 1

γελοῖος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 3

γινώσκω: to learn, perceive, decide, 3

δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5

δια-κρίνω: decide, settle; distinguish, 2

25 ἂ μὴ δεῖ (πράττειν): *what...*; '(things) which...' relative clause, the missing antecedent is obj. of πράξει

ἓ...ὑπομεῖναι: *which...*; relative clause, the antecedent is τοιαῦτα

26 ἂν ὑπομεῖναι: *would...*; 3s aor. potential opt. ὑπομένω

ἓνια: *some (actions)*

ἔστιν: *it is possible*

ἀναγκασθῆναι (πράττειν): *that (anyone)...*; aor. pass. inf.; add an acc. subject

27 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον: *but rather*

ἀποθανετέον (ἔστίς): *one must...*; '(it is to be... (by one)') verbal adj. + εἰμί governing a dat. of agent

παθόντι: *by one...*; aor. pple πάσχω, dat. of agent of the verbal adj. (if the verbal adj. is translated actively, make the agent the subject)

τὰ δεινότατα: substantive, superlative adj. καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*

28 τὸν...Ἀλκμαίωνα: obj. of τὰ ἀναγκάστα

ἐμ-μένω: to abide by or in; remain fixed, 1

ἐνί-στε: sometimes, from time to time, 4

ἔπαινος, ὁ: praise, approval, commendation, 3

Εὐριπίδης, -ου, ὁ: Euripides (the tragedian), 1

μητρο-κτονέω: to kill one's mother, 1

ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7

προσ-δοκάω: to expect; suppose, think, 1

ὑπερ-τείνω: to strain, overstrain, 2

ὑπο-μενετέος, -ον: to be abided, endured, 1

ψόγος, ὁ: blame, censure, 2

γελοῖα: i.e. to us; pred. of φαίνεται

τὰ ἀναγκάσαντα: *the things...*; nom. subj., aor. pple

μητροκτονῆσαι: aor. inf.

29 ἔστι χαλεπὸν: *it is...*; impersonal

διακρίναι: aor. inf.

30 ποῖον ἀντὶ ποίου αἰρετέον (ἔστίς): *what sort of thing (is)...*; ind. question with verbal adj.; ἀντὶ means 'instead of...';

τί ἀντὶ τίνος ὑπομενετέον (ἔστίς): *what (is) to be...*; ind. question parallel to above;

31 χαλεπώτερον (ἔστίς): *it is...*; impersonal ἐμμεῖναι: aor. inf.

τοῖς γνωσθεῖσιν: *in...*; dat. of compound verb; dat. pl. aor. pass. pple, 'decide' ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ: *for the most part*; or 'in general'

32 τὰ προσδοκώμενα: *the things...*; i.e. punishments

32 ἂ δ' ἀναγκάζονται: *(the things) which...*; relative clause, the antecedent is subject

33 αἰσχροῖα (ἔστίς): nom. pred.

ἀναγκασθέντας ἢ μὴ. τὰ δὲ ποῖα φατέον βίαια; ἢ ἀπλῶς
 μέν, ὅπότε ἂν ἡ αἰτία ἐν τοῖς ἐκτὸς ᾗ καὶ ὁ πράττων μη-
 δὲν συμβάλληται; ἂ δὲ καθ' αὐτὰ μὲν ἀκούσιά ἐστι, νῦν
 δὲ καὶ ἀντὶ τῶνδε αἰρετά, καὶ ἡ ἀρχὴ ἐν τῷ πράττοντι,
 καθ' αὐτὰ μὲν ἀκούσιά ἐστι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἀντὶ τῶνδε ἐκούσια. 5
 μᾶλλον δ' ἔοικεν ἐκούσιους· αἱ γὰρ πράξεις ἐν τοῖς καθ'
 ἕκαστα, ταῦτα δ' ἐκούσια. ποῖα δ' ἀντὶ ποίων αἰρετέον, οὐ
 ῥάδιον ἀποδοῦναι· πολλαὶ γὰρ διαφοραὶ εἰσιν ἐν τοῖς καθ'
 ἕκαστα. εἰ δέ τις τὰ ἡδέα καὶ τὰ καλὰ φαίη βίαια
 εἶναι (ἀναγκάζειν γὰρ ἔξω ὄντα), πάντα ἂν εἴη αὐτῷ 10
 βίαια· τούτων γὰρ χάριν πάντες πάντα πράττουσιν. καὶ οἱ
 μὲν βίᾳ καὶ ἄκοντες λυπηρῶς, οἱ δὲ διὰ τὸ ἡδὺ καὶ κα-

αἰρετέος, -ον: to be chosen, 2

αἰρετός, -ή, -όν: choiceworthy, chosen, 5

αἰτία, ἡ: reason, cause, responsibility, 7

ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον: involuntary, unwilling, 8

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 8

ἀντί: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8

ἀπο-δίδωμι: to render, exhibit, give back, 5

βία, βίης, ἡ: compulsion, force, 4

βίαιος, -α, -ον: compulsory, forcible, 6

δια-φορά, ἡ: difference, 2

ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8

ἐκτός: outside; out of, far from (+ gen.), 3

ἔξω: out of (+ gen.); adv. outside, 1

νῦν: now; as it is, 7

ὅδε, ἧδε, τόδε: this, this here, 2

ὅποτε: when, by what time, 1

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 7

συμ-βάλλω: to contribute; join in battle, 3

φατέος, -ον: to be said or called, 3

χάρις, ἡ: favor; χάριν +gen. for the sake of, 1

1 τοὺς ἀναγκασθέντας: those (people)....;

aor. pass. pple

μὴ (ἀναγκασθέντας): those (not)....; μὴ is
 used instead of οὐ because the pple is
 conditional in sense

τὰ ποῖα: what sort of actions...?

δή: therefore, then; inferential

φατέον (ἐστίν): must...; ' (it is) to...'

impersonal verbal adj., which

ἢ ἀπλῶς: or (what are to be called
 compulsory) without qualification

2 ὅποτε ἂν...ᾗ...συμβάλληται: whenever...;
 general temporal clause, 3s pres. subj. εἰμί

τοῖς ἐκτός: things outside; i.e. the agent;
 preposition in the attributive position

3 ἄ...: what...; ' (actions) which...'

καθ' (ἐ)αυτά: in themselves

νῦν δὲ: but as it is...

4 ἀντὶ τῶνδε: instead of these (alternatives)
 αἰρετά (ἐστίν)

ἡ ἀρχή: the source

τῷ πράττοντι: the one...; pres. pple

5 ἀκούσιά ἐστι...ἐκούσια: (these actions) are
 involuntary...voluntary; the subject is the
 entire relative clause ἄ... in ll. 3-4

νῦν δὲ: but as it is...

ἀντὶ τῶνδε: instead of these (alternatives)

6 (εἰσίν) ἐν τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστα: (are engaged) in
 particulars; 'those each by each,'

ταῦτα (ἐστίν): i.e. particulars; subject

7 ποῖα...αἰρετέον: what sort (of actions)....;

ind. question governed by ἀποδοῦναι

αἰρετέον (ἐστίν): must (we)....; verbal adj.

8 ῥάδιον (ἐστίν)

ἀποδοῦναι: aor. inf.

9 εἰ...φαίη,...ἂν εἴη: if...should, would...; fut.
 less vivid (εἰ opt., ἂν + opt.); opt. φημί, εἰμί

τὰ ἡδέα...εἶναι: that...; ind. disc.

10 αὐτῷ: for him; dat. of interest

11 τούτων: obj. of χάριν; i.e. ἡδέα and καλὰ

12 οἱ μὲν βίᾳ καὶ ἄκοντες (πράττοντες)

λυπηρῶς (πράττουσιν): act in pain

λὸν μεθ' ἡδονῆς· γελοῖον δὲ τὸ αἰτιᾶσθαι τὰ ἐκτός, ἀλλὰ
μὴ αὐτὸν εὐθήρατον ὄντα ὑπὸ τῶν τοιούτων, καὶ τῶν μὲν
καλῶν ἑαυτόν, τῶν δ' αἰσχροῶν τὰ ἡδέα. ἔοικε δὴ τὸ βί- 15
αιον εἶναι οὗ ἕξωθεν ἢ ἀρχή, μηδὲν συμβαλλομένου τοῦ
βιασθέντος.

τὸ δὲ δι' ἄγνοιαν οὐχ ἐκούσιον μὲν ἅπαν ἐστίν, ἀκού-
σιον δὲ τὸ ἐπίλυπον καὶ ἐν μεταμελείᾳ· ὁ γὰρ δι' ἄγνοιαν
πράξας ὁτιοῦν, μηδὲν τι δυσχεραίνων ἐπὶ τῇ πράξει, ἐκὼν 20
μὲν οὐ πέπραχεν, ὃ γε μὴ ᾔδει, οὐδ' αὖ ἄκων, μὴ λυπο-
μενός γε. τοῦ δὴ δι' ἄγνοιαν ὁ μὲν ἐν μεταμελείᾳ ἄκων
δοκεῖ, ὁ δὲ μὴ μεταμελόμενος, ἐπεὶ ἕτερος, ἔστω οὐχ ἐκὼν·
ἐπεὶ γὰρ διαφέρει, βέλτιον ὄνομα ἔχειν ἴδιον. ἕτερον δ' 24

αἰτιάσμαι: to blame; accuse, charge, 1
ἀκούσιος, -ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον: involuntary, unwilling, 8
ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
αὔ: again, once more; further, moreover, 2
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 3
βιάζω: to compel, force, 1
βίαιος, -α, -ον: compulsory, forcible, 6
γελοῖος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 3
δυσ-χεραίνω: to feel annoyance, be vexed, 3
ἐκτός: outside; out of, far from (+ gen.), 3

13 γελοῖον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.

τὰ ἐκτός: *things outside (ourselves)*

14 μὴ (τὸ αἰτιᾶσθαι) (ἐ)αυτόν: ellipsis
εὐθήρατον ὄντα: *for...*; 'because of...'
pres. ppl εἰμί is causal in sense

ὑπὸ...: *because of...*; gen. of cause
τῶν καλῶν: *for...*; gen. of charge

15 (τὸ αἰτιᾶσθαι) ἑαυτόν: add. inf.
τῶν δ' αἰσχροῶν: *but for...*; gen. of charge
(τὸ αἰτιᾶσθαι) τὰ ἡδέα: add. inf.
δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

16 οὗ... ἢ ἀρχή (ἐστίν): *whose source...*;
relative clause πάσχω

μηδὲν... τοῦ βιασθέντος: (*the one*)...; gen.
abs.; τοῦ βιασθέντος, 'the one...' is a
substantive from the aor. pass. ppl and
subject of the gen. abs.

18 τὸ δὲ δι' ἄγνοιαν (πράττειν): *to (act)...*;
articular inf. and subj.
οὐχ ἐκούσιον: *not-voluntary*; technical term

ἐκὼν, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: voluntarily, willing, 8

ἕξω-θεν: from without, 2

ἐπί-λυπος, -ον: painful, 3

εὐ-θήρατος, -ον: easy to hunt down, 1

ἴδιος, -α, -ον: peculiar, private, one's own, 5

μετα-μελεία, ἡ: regret, change of heart, 3

μετα-μέλομαι: to feel regret, repentance, 1

μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7

ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 6

ὅστις-οὖν, ἥτις-οὖν, ὅτι-οὖν: whosoever, 5

συμ-βάλλω: to contribute; join in battle, 3

not equiv. to involuntary

ἅπαν: *in every case*; 'every,' modifies subj.

19 τὸ ἐπίλυπον... μεταμελεία (πράττειν):
(*acting*)...; articular inf. and subj.
but to (act)...; perfect πάσχω

ὁ... πράξας: *the one...*; nom. s. aor. ppl

20 ὁτιοῦν: obj. of ppl, neut. ὅστις οὖν
μηδὲν τι: *not at all*; adv. acc. (inner acc.)

ἐπὶ...: *at...*; (S1689.2c)

21 πέπραχεν: *has not...*; pf. πράττω

ὃ γε... ᾔδει: *since...*; a relative (here, neut.
acc. referring to the action) followed by γε
is often causal in sense; 3s plpf. οἶδα
is translated in the simple past

οὐδὲ... ἄκων (πέπραχεν): *nor...*; ellipsis

μὴ... γε: *if...*; ppl conditional or causal

22 ὁ μὲν ἐν μεταμελείᾳ (πράξας): subject

23 ἐπεὶ ἕτερος: *since (he is) different*

ἔστω: *let him be not-voluntary*; 3s pres.
imperative εἰμί

ἔοικε καὶ τὸ δι' ἄγνοιαν πράττειν τοῦ ἀγνοοῦντα· ὁ 25
 γὰρ μεθύων ἢ ὀργιζόμενος οὐ δοκεῖ δι' ἄγνοιαν πράττειν
 ἀλλὰ διὰ τι τῶν εἰρημένων, οὐκ εἰδὼς δὲ ἀλλ' ἀγνοῶν.
 ἀγνοεῖ μὲν οὖν πᾶς ὁ μοχθηρὸς ἃ δεῖ πράττειν καὶ ὧν
 ἀφεκτέον, καὶ διὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀμαρτίαν ἄδικοι καὶ ὅλως
 κακοὶ γίνονται· τὸ δ' ἀκούσιον βούλεται λέγεσθαι οὐκ εἴ τις 30
 ἀγνοεῖ τὰ συμφέροντα· οὐ γὰρ ἢ ἐν τῇ προαιρέσει ἄγνοια
 αἰτία τοῦ ἀκουσίου ἀλλὰ τῆς μοχθηρίας, οὐδ' ἢ καθόλου
 (ψέγονται γὰρ διὰ γε ταύτην) ἀλλ' ἢ καθ' ἕκαστα, ἐν

ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 8
 αἰτία, ἡ: reason, cause, responsibility, 7
 ἀκούσιος, -ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
 ἀμαρτία, ἡ: mistake, failure, fault; guilt, 3
 ἀφεκτέος, -ον: to be kept away from, 1
 καθ-όλου: on the whole, in general, 4

μεθύω: to be drunk with wine, 3
 μοχθηρία, ἡ: wickedness, 2
 μοχθηρός, -ή, -όν: wicked, 2
 συμ-φέρων, -οντος: expedient, useful, 4
 ψέγω: to blame, censure, object to, 8

25 ἔοικε... τοῦ (πράττειν) ἀγνοοῦντα: *in fact to act through ignorance seems different from acting in ignorance*; τοῦ πράττειν is a gen. of comparison following ἕτερον; this important distinction is discussed below
 27 τῶν εἰρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω (έρέω)

27 εἰδὼς: nom. sg. pple οἶδα

28 ἄ...: *what...*; '(that) which...' the missing antecedent is obj. of ἀγνοεῖ

ὧν: *from what...*; '(that) from which,'

29 ἀφεκτέον (έστίν): *he must...*; '(it is) to be... (by him)' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί expressing necessity, often translated actively; ὧν is gen. separation (S2152)

29 γίνονται: *they...*; i.e. men who are wicked; the subject shifts from 3s to 3p

30 τὸ δ' ἀκούσιον: *but Involuntary...*

βούλεται λέγεσθαι οὐκ: *does not wish to be mentioned*; 'does not mean,' common idiom

31 τὰ συμφέροντα: *his (true) interests*; 'the things expedient (for him)'

ἐν τῇ προαιρέσει: i.e. in respect to moral choice

αἰτία (έστίν): *(is) cause...*; nom. pred.

τοῦ ἀκουσίου: *of the Involuntary*

32 οὐδὲ ἡ καθόλου (ἄγνοια)... ἀλλὰ ἡ καθ' ἕκαστα (ἄγνοια): *nor (is the Involuntary) (ignorance) in general but (ignorance) in particular*

33 ψέγονται... ταύτην: *for the are blamed because of this*; i.e. ignorance in general

οἷς καὶ περὶ ᾧ ἡ πράξις· ἐν τούτοις γὰρ καὶ ἔλεος καὶ
 συγγνώμη· ὁ γὰρ τούτων τι ἀγνοῶν ἀκουσίως πράττει.
 ἴσως οὖν οὐ χεῖρον διορίσαι αὐτά, τίνα καὶ πόσα ἐστὶ, τίς
 τε δὴ καὶ τί καὶ περὶ τί ἢ ἐν τίνι πράττει, ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ
 τίνι, οἷον ὀργάνῳ, καὶ ἔνεκα τίνος, οἷον σωτηρίας, καὶ πῶς, 5
 οἷον ἡρέμα ἢ σφόδρα. ἅπαντα μὲν οὖν ταῦτα οὐδεὶς ἂν
 ἀγνοήσκει μὴ μαινόμενος, δῆλον δ' ὡς οὐδὲ τὸν πράττοντα·
 πῶς γὰρ ἑαυτὸν γε; ὁ δὲ πράττει ἀγνοήσκειν ἂν τις, οἷον
 “λέγοντές φασιν ἐκπεσεῖν αὐτούς”, ἢ οὐκ εἰδέναι ὅτι ἀπόρρητα
 ἦν, ὥσπερ Αἰσχύλος τὰ μυστικά, ἢ δεῖξαι βουλόμενος 10
 ἀφείναι, ὡς ὁ τὸν καταπέλτην. οἰηθείη δ' ἂν τις καὶ τὸν
 υἱὸν πολέμιον εἶναι ὥσπερ ἡ Μερόπη, καὶ ἐσφαιρώσθαι

Αἰσχύλος, ὁ: Aeschylus, 1

ἀκουσίως: unwillingly, involuntarily, 2

ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, all, quite all, 5

ἀπόρρητος, -ον: unspeakable, in secret, 1

ἀφ-ίημι: to send/throw, let loose, 2

δείκνυμι: to show, 1

δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9

δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, 6

ἐκ-πίπτω: to fall out, be driven out, 1

ἔλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 3

ἐνί-οτε: sometimes, from time to time, 4

ἡρέμα: gently, softly, quietly, 1

κατα-πέλτης (πάλητης), -ου, ὁ: catapult, 1

μαίνομαι: to mad, rage, be furious, 3

Μερόπη, ἡ: Merope, 1

μυστικός, -ή, -όν: mystic, of the mysteries, 1

οἶμαι (οἶμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5

ὄργανον, τό: instrument, tool, organ, 1

πολέμιος, -α, -ον: hostile, of the enemy, 2

πόσος, -α, -ον: how much, many or great, 4

συγ-γνώμη, ἡ: forgiveness, pardon, 3

σφαιρώω: to make into a ball, blunt, 1

σφόδρα: violently, vehemently, 2

σωτηρία, ἡ: preservation, saving a life, 5

υἱός (υἱός), ὁ: son, 1

χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 4

1 ἐν οἷς καὶ περὶ ᾧ ἡ πράξις (ἐστίν): *in which (conditions) and about which (conditions)...*
 in apposition to ἡ καθ' ἕκαστα

2 ὁ...ἀγνοῶν: *the one...*; pres. pple

τούτων: *of these*; i.e. conditions in line 1

3 οὐ χεῖρον (ἐστίν): *it is not bad*; 'not worse,'
 διορίσαι: aor. inf.

αὐτά, τίνα καὶ πόσα ἐστὶ: *what sort and how many they are*; 'them, what sort and how many they are;' i.e. the conditions, the ignorance of which cause something involuntary: a list of interrogatives follow
 τίς: i.e. the agent

4 τί: i.e. the act

περὶ τί ἢ ἐν τίνι πράττει: i.e. the person or object affected or circumstances

5 τίνι: *by what*; i.e. instrument; dat. of means
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'

ἔνεκα τίνος: i.e. purpose or result

πῶς: i.e. the manner

6 ἂν ἀγνοήσκει: *could...*; aor. potential opt.

7 μὴ μαινόμενος: *unless mad*; 'if not being mad,' the pple is conditional in sense

δῆλον (ἐστίν) ὥς...: *(it is) clear that*;

οὐδὲ: *nor yet (is he ignorant of)*

τὸν πράττοντα: *the one acting*; i.e. the agent, mentioned in line 3

8 πῶς (ἀγνοήσειεν ἂν τις): *how (could he be ignorant of...)*; supply verb

ὁ δὲ πράττει: *what he does*; see τί in line 4

ἀγνοήσειεν ἂν: *could...*; aor. potential opt.

λέγοντές φασιν ἐκπεσεῖν αὐτούς: *they say that the words slipped out while speaking*
 εἰδέναι: inf. οἶδα

δεῖξαι, ἀφείναι: aor. inf. δείκνυμι, ἀφίημι
 οἰηθείη: *might...*; 3s aor. dep. potential opt.

τὸ λελογχωμένον δόρυ, ἢ τὸν λίθον κίσσηριν εἶναι· καὶ ἐπὶ
 σωτηρίᾳ πίσας ἀποκτείναι ἄν· καὶ θίξαι βουλόμενος,
 ὥσπερ οἱ ἀκροχειριζόμενοι, πατάξειεν ἄν. περὶ πάντα δὴ 15
 ταῦτα τῆς ἀγνοίας οὔσης, ἐν οἷς ἡ πρᾶξις, ὁ τούτων τι
 ἀγνοήσας ἄκων δοκεῖ πεπραχέναι, καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τοῖς
 κυριωτάτοις· κυριώτατα δ' εἶναι δοκεῖ ἐν οἷς ἡ πρᾶξις καὶ
 οὗ ἕνεκα. τοῦ δὴ κατὰ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀγνοίαν ἀκουσίου λε-
 γομένου ἔτι δεῖ τὴν πρᾶξιν λυπηρὰν εἶναι καὶ ἐν μετα- 20
 μελείᾳ.

Ὅντος δ' ἀκουσίου τοῦ βία καὶ δι' ἀγνοίαν, τὸ ἐκού-
 σιον δόξειεν ἄν εἶναι οὗ ἡ ἀρχὴ ἐν αὐτῷ εἰδότες τὰ καθ'
 ἕκαστα ἐν οἷς ἡ πρᾶξις. ἴσως γὰρ οὐ καλῶς λέγεται ἀκού- 24

ἀκούσιος, -ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
 ἀκροχειρίζω: to struggle at arm's length, 1
 ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον: involuntary, unwilling, 8
 ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 1
 βία, βίας, ἡ: compulsion, force, 4
 δόρυ, δόρατος, τό: spear, spearshaft, pole, 1
 θιγγάνω (αορ. θιγ): take hold of, touch, 1
 καλῶς: well, nobly, 4

κίσσηρις, ἡ: pumice-stone, 1
 λίθος, ὁ: stone, 3
 λογχόμαι: to be furnished with a point, 1
 μετα-μελεία, ἡ: regret, change of heart, 3
 πατάττω: to strike, beat, 1
 πιπίσκω: to make drink (causative πίνω), 1
 σωτηρία, ἡ: preservation, saving a life, 5

ἐσφαιρῶσθαι: *that...*; ind. disc. with pf.
 pass. inf. σφαιρώω; δόρυ is acc. subj.
 13 λελογχωμένον: pf. pass. pple
 ἐπὶ...: *for...*; expressing purpose
 14 πίσας: *by making (a man) drink*; i.e. what
 one believes is medicine; nom. sg. aor. pple
 is causal; supply the obj.
 ἀποκτείναι ἄν: *one might...*; 3s aor.
 potential opt.; supply same obj. as πίσας
 θίξαι: aor. inf.
 15 οἱ ἀκροχειριζόμενοι: i.e. a style of
 wrestling where opponents grab each
 other's hands but not each other's bodies
 πατάξειεν ἄν: *might...*; aor. potential opt.
 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential
 16 τῆς ἀγνοίας οὔσης: gen. abs.
 ἐν οἷς ἡ πρᾶξις (ἐστίν): *in which*
(circumstances)...
 17 πεπραχέναι: pf. act. inf. πράττω

ἐν τοῖς κυριωτάτοις: *among the most*
important (conditions)
 κυριώτατα: *most important (conditions)*
 19 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential
 τοῦ...λεγομένου: *the Involuntary*
according to...; gen. abs. with pass. pple
 22 ὄντος...ἀκουσίου: *the Involuntary...*;
 gen. abs.
 τοῦ βία καὶ δι' ἀγνοίαν: *(an act)...*; pred. in
 the gen. abs.; dat. cause and prepositional
 phrase in the attributive position
 23 δόξειεν ἄν: *would...*; aor. potential opt.
 οὗ ἡ ἀρχὴ (ἐστίν)...: *(that) whose origin...*;
 relative clause; the missing antecedent is
 nom. pred.
 εἰδότες: dat. sg. pple οἶδα
 τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα: *the particulars*; 'those
 each by each'
 24 οὐ καλῶς: i.e. mistakenly

σια εἶναι τὰ διὰ θυμὸν ἢ ἐπιθυμίαν. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ 25
 οὐδὲν ἔτι τῶν ἄλλων ζώων ἐκουσίως πράξει, οὐδ' οἱ παῖδες·
 εἴτα πότερον οὐδὲν ἐκουσίως πράττομεν τῶν δι' ἐπιθυμίαν
 καὶ θυμὸν, ἢ τὰ καλὰ μὲν ἐκουσίως τὰ δ' αἰσχροὶ ἀκου-
 σίως; ἢ γελοῖον ἑνὸς γε αἰτίου ὄντος; ἄτοπον δὲ ἴσως
 ἀκούσια φάναι ὧν δεῖ ὀρέγεσθαι· δεῖ δὲ καὶ ὀργίζεσθαι 30
 ἐπὶ τισι καὶ ἐπιθυμῶν τινῶν, οἷον ὑγίειας καὶ μαθήσεως.
 δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀκούσια λυπηρὰ εἶναι, τὰ δὲ κατ' ἐπιθυ-
 μίαν ἡδέα. ἔτι δὲ τί διαφέρει τῷ ἀκούσια εἶναι τὰ κατὰ
 λογισμὸν ἢ θυμὸν ἀμαρτηθέντα; φευκτὰ μὲν γὰρ ἄμφω,

αἷτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 9
 ἀκουσίως: unwillingly, involuntarily, 2
 ἄμφω: both (dual), 8
 ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 3
 γελοῖος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 3
 εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9
 εἴτα: then, next, and so, therefore, 2
 ἐκουσίως: willingly, voluntarily, 4
 ζῶον, τό: animal, 7

λογισμός ὁ: calculation; account, reasoning, 3
 μάθησις, ἡ: learning, 1
 ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
 πότερος, -α, -ον: whether, which (of two)? 5
 ὑγίεια, ἡ: health, 4
 φευκτός, -ον: to be avoided or escaped, 2

25 τὰ διὰ...ἐπιθυμίαν: (*acts*)...; nom. subj. of
 λέγεται; both prepositional phrases are in
 the attributive position; ἀκούσια is the pred.
 πρῶτον: *first (if we say this)*; adverbial acc.
 i.e if we assume that acts because of anger
 etc. are involuntary, the following is true
 26 οὐδὲν ἔτι: *no longer any...*; 'not any still'
 πράξει: fut. πράττω
 27 πότερον...πράττομεν: *Do we do...?*;
 leave πότερον untranslated
 τῶν...θυμόν: *of (those acts)...*; partitive
 gen.
 28 ἢ (πράττομεν): *or...*; add verb from above
 γελοῖον (ἐστίν): (*this is*)...
 ἑνός...ὄντος: *since one (person)...*; gen.
 abs. causal in sense: αἷτιος, 'responsible'
 29 γε: often left untranslated: γε emphasizes

ἑνός gen. sg. of εἷς
 ἄτοπον (ἐστίν): (*it is*)...
 30 φάναι: *to call* (x) (y); pres. inf. φημί
 ὧν: (*actions*) *which...*; relative, gen. obj. of
 ὀρέγεσθαι
 31 ἐπὶ τισι...: *at...*; dat. pl. indefinite τίς
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 32 τὰ μὲν ἀκούσια...: *some involuntary acts*
 τὰ δὲ κατ(ὰ) ἐπιθυμίας (ἀκούσια εἶναι)
 ἡδέα: *other involuntary acts...*; ellipsis
 κατ(ὰ)...: *in respect to...*
 33 τί διαφέρει: *What difference are...?*
 τῷ...εἶναι: *in respect to...*; articular inf. (-
 ing) and dat. of respect
 τὰ...ἀμαρτηθέντα: *acts...*; aor. pass. pple
 κατ(ὰ)...: *in respect to...*
 φευκτα (ἐστίν): dual neut. as subject

δοκεῖ δὲ οὐχ ἦττον ἀνθρωπικὰ εἶναι τὰ ἄλογα πάθη, ὥστε καὶ αἱ πράξεις τοῦ ἀνθρώπου <αἱ> ἀπὸ θυμοῦ καὶ ἐπιθυμίας. ἄτοπον δὴ τὸ τιθέναι ἀκούσια ταῦτα.

2. Διωρισμένων δὲ τοῦ τε ἐκούσιου καὶ τοῦ ἀκούσιου, περὶ προαιρέσεως ἔπεται διελθεῖν· οἰκειότατον γὰρ εἶναι δοκεῖ 5 τῇ ἀρετῇ καὶ μᾶλλον τὰ ἦθη κρίνειν τῶν πράξεων. ἡ προαίρεσις δὴ ἐκούσιον μὲν φαίνεται, οὐ ταῦτόν δέ, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ πλεον τὸ ἐκούσιον· τοῦ μὲν γὰρ ἐκούσιου καὶ παῖδες καὶ τᾶλλα ζῶα κοινωνεῖ, προαιρέσεως δ' οὐ, καὶ τὰ ἐξαίφνης ἐκούσια μὲν λέγομεν, κατὰ προαίρεσιν δ' οὐ. οἱ δὲ λέγοντες 10 αὐτὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἢ θυμὸν ἢ βούλησιν ἢ τινα δόξαν οὐκ εὐόκασιν ὀρθῶς λέγειν. οὐ γὰρ κοινὸν ἢ προαίρεσις καὶ τῶν

ἀκούσιος, -ον: involuntary; unwilling, 9
ἄ-λογος, -ον: irrational, unreasonable, 4
ἀνθρωπικός, -ή, -όν: human, of a human, 2
ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 3
βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: wanting, want, 6
δι-έρχομαι: to go/pass through (in detail), 1
δι-ορίζω: to define, distinguish, 6
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, 5
ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8
ἐξαίφνης: suddenly, immediately, 2
ἔπομαι: to follow, accompany, escort, 3

- 1 ἦττον: comparative adv.
ἀνθρωπικὰ: i.e. part of human nature
τὰ ἄλογα πάθη: subject
ὥστε: *so that...*; result clause
2 αἱ πράξεις...: supply δοκεῖ ἀνθρωπικὰ εἶναι from above
ἀπὸ...: i.e. because of these things
3 ἄτοπον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential
τὸ τιθέναι: *to assign (x) (y)*; or 'to make (x) (y)' articular inf. + acc. obj. and acc. pred.
4 Διωρισμένων...ἀκούσιου: gen. abs. with pf. pass. pple
διελθεῖν: inf. subject; aor. inf. δι-έρχομαι
5 (τῇ προαίρεσις) δοκεῖ: (choice) seems
6 τὰ ἦθη: acc. pl., ἦθε-α
κρίνειν: assume ἢ προαίρεσις δοκεῖ from above
7 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

ζῶον, τό: animal, 7
ἦθος, -εος, τό: character, 1
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common(place); public, 7
κοινωνέω: have a share of, partake in (gen) 2
κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6
οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον: proper to, suitable to (dat), 1
ὀρθῶς: rightly, correctly, 4
παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
τίθημι: to place, put, set, 3
ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

- τ(ὸ) αὐτόν: attributive αὐτός means 'same'
8 ἐπὶ πλεον (ἐστίν): (*is*) *over more*; i.e. has a greater range than choice
τοῦ ἐκούσιου: partitive gen. obj. of verb καὶ...καὶ...: *both...and...*
9 τᾶλλα: τὰ ἄλλα
προαιρέσεως δ' οὐ: add καὶ παῖδες... κοινωνεῖ from above
τὰ ἐξαίφνης: *sudden acts*; adv. in attributive position
10 λέγομεν: *we call*; governs a double acc. (obj. and pred.)
κατὰ: *in respect to...*
οἱ λέγοντες: *those...*; pple governing a double acc.
11 αὐτὴν: i.e. προαίρεσις
12 κοινὸν...τῶν ἄλογων: *a thing shared with irrational (beasts)*; i.e. not shared both by humans and animals; supply ἐστίν

ἀλόγων, ἐπιθυμία δὲ καὶ θυμός. καὶ ὁ ἀκρατὴς ἐπιθυ-
 μῶν μὲν πράττει, προαιρούμενος δ' οὐ· ὁ ἐγκρατὴς δ' ἀνά-
 παλιν προαιρούμενος μὲν, ἐπιθυμῶν δ' οὐ. καὶ προαίρεσις 15
 μὲν ἐπιθυμία ἐναντιοῦται, ἐπιθυμία δ' ἐπιθυμία οὐ. καὶ ἡ
 μὲν ἐπιθυμία ἡδέος καὶ ἐπιλύπου, ἡ προαίρεσις δ' οὔτε λυ-
 πηροῦ οὐθ' ἡδέος. θυμὸς δ' ἔτι ἥττον· ἥκιστα γὰρ τὰ διὰ θυ-
 μὸν κατὰ προαίρεσιν εἶναι δοκεῖ. ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐδὲ βούλησίς
 γε, καίπερ σύνεγγυς φαινόμενον· προαίρεσις μὲν γὰρ οὐκ 20
 ἔστι τῶν ἀδυνάτων, καὶ εἴ τις φαίη προαιρεῖσθαι, δοκοίη
 ἂν ἡλίθιος εἶναι· βούλησις δ' ἐστὶ <καὶ> τῶν ἀδυνάτων, οἷον
 ἀθανασίας. καὶ ἡ μὲν βούλησις ἐστὶ καὶ περὶ τὰ μηδαμῶς δι'
 αὐτοῦ πραχθέντα ἂν, οἷον ὑποκριτὴν τινα νικᾶν ἢ ἀθλητὴν· 24

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: incapable; impossible, 4
 ἀ-θανασία, ἡ: immortality, 1
 ἀθλητής, -οῦ, ὁ: athlete, 2
 ἀ-κρατής, -ές: without self-control, 1
 ἄ-λογος, -ον: irrational, unreasonable, 4
 ἀνά-παλιν: in the opposite way, back again, 5
 βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: wanting, want, 6
 ἐγ-κρατής, -ες: with self-control, 1
 ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, contradict (dat.) 2

ἐπί-λυπος, -ον: painful, causing pain, 3
 ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least; not at all, 1
 ἡλίθιος, -ον: foolish, silly; idle, vain, 2
 καί-περ: although, 2
 μηδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 1
 μὴν: truly, surely, 5
 νικάω: to win; conquer, defeat, 2
 σύν-εγγυς: near, similar, 1
 ὑπο-κριτής, ὁ: actor; pretender, hypocrite, 1

13 ἐπιθυμία δὲ καὶ θυμός: *but...*; supply verb
 and predicate from previous clause
 ὁ ἀκρατής: *one without self-control*
 ἐπιθυμῶν: *by..., because of...*; causal pres.
 pple
 14 προαιρούμενος: causal pres. pple
 ὁ ἐγκρατής: *one...*
 15 προαιρούμενος...ἐπιθυμῶν: see above
 προαιρέσει-ι: dat. of compound verb,
 προαίρεσις
 16 ἐπιθυμία (ἐναντιοῦται): add verb
 17 ἡδέος καὶ ἐπιλύπου (ἐστίν): (*is*) of...;
 objective gen. as predicate equiv. to '(is a
 desire) for...'
 οὔτε λυπηροῦ οὐθ' ἡδέος (ἐστίν): (*is*)
neither of...; objective gen. as predicate
equiv. to '(is a choice) of...'
 18 ἥττον: comparative adv. ἥκιστα
 ἥκιστα: superlative adv.
 τὰ διὰ θυμόν: *the (acts)...*
 19 κατὰ...: *in accordance with...*
 ἀλλὰ μὴν...γε: *then again (choice is) also*

not a wish; ἀλλὰ μὴν introduce a new item
 in the list (S2786); οὐδὲ (οὐ καὶ) is an
 adv. and γε emphasizes βούλησις
 20 καίπερ...φαινόμενον: neut. pple modifies
 fem. sg. βούλησις καίπερ reveals that the
 pple is concessive in sense
 21 τῶν ἀδυνάτων: *of impossible things*;
 objective gen. as predicate equiv. to '(is a
 choice) of...'
 καὶ εἰ...φαίη, δοκοίη ἂν: *and if...should,*
...would; fut. less vivid (εἰ opt., ἂν + opt.)
 3s pres. opt. φημί δοκέω
 προαιρεῖσθαι: add τὰ ἀδύνατα as obj.
 22 τῶν ἀδυνάτων: see line 21
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'
 23 τὰ...πραχθέντα ἂν: *things which*
would...; aor. pass. pple πράττω + ἂν
 equiv. to a aor. potential opt. of a finite verb
 δι(ὰ) (ἐ)αυτοῦ: *through oneself*
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'
 ὑποκριτὴν...νικᾶν: *that...*; ind. disc. with
 pres. α-contract inf. νικάω

προαιρείται δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα οὐδεὶς, ἀλλ' ὅσα οἴεται γενέσθαι 25
 ἂν δι' αὐτοῦ. ἔτι δ' ἡ μὲν βούλησις τοῦ τέλους ἐστὶ μάλλον, ἡ
 δὲ προαίρεσις τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος, οἷον ὑγιαίνειν βουλόμεθα,
 προαιρούμεθα δὲ δι' ὧν ὑγιανοῦμεν, καὶ εὐδαιμονεῖν βουλόμεθα
 μὲν καὶ φαμέν, προαιρούμεθα δὲ λέγειν οὐχ ἁρμόζει· ὅλως
 γὰρ ἔοικεν ἡ προαίρεσις περὶ τὰ ἐφ' ἡμῖν εἶναι. οὐδὲ δὴ 30
 δόξα ἂν εἴη· ἡ μὲν γὰρ δόξα δοκεῖ περὶ πάντα εἶναι,
 καὶ οὐδὲν ἥττον περὶ τὰ αἰδία καὶ τὰ ἀδύνατα ἢ τὰ ἐφ'
 ἡμῖν· καὶ τῷ ψευδεῖ καὶ ἀληθεῖ διαιρεῖται, σὺ τῷ κακῷ
 καὶ ἀγαθῷ, ἡ προαίρεσις δὲ τούτοις μάλλον. ὅλως μὲν οὖν

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: incapable; impossible, 4
 αἰδιος, -ον: eternal, 2
 ἀληθής, -ές: true, 8
 ἁρμόζω: be suitable, fitting, harmonize, 1
 βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: wanting, want, 6
 δι-αιρέω: to divide, distinguish, separate, 3

δόξα, ἡ: opinion, 5
 εὐ-δαιμονέω: to be happy, be well, 1
 οἶμαι (οἶμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5
 ὑγιαίνω: to be healthy, sound, 2
 ψευδος, -εος, τό: falsehood, 2

25 ὅσα...αὐτοῦ: *as many things as...*; the missing antecedent is obj. of προαιρείται οἴεται: (*a person*)...;
 γενέσθαι ἂν: (*that*)...would; ind. disc. with aor. inf. + ἂν equiv. to aor. potential opt. of a finite verb; ὅσα is acc. subj.
 26 δι(ἀ)(ἐ)αυτοῦ: reflexive
 τοῦ τέλους ἐστὶ: *is of...*; objective gen. as predicate equiv. to 'is (a wish) for...'
 27 τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος: *of things toward the end*; i.e. of the means; see note for l. 26
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 29 φαμέν (εὐδαιμονεῖν βουλέσθαι): 1p pres. φημί; i.e. we do it and talk about it as well
 προαιρούμεθα δὲ λέγειν οὐχ ἁρμόζει: *it is not suitable to say (that) we choose (to be happy)*; impersonal construction

30 τὰ ἐφ' ἡμῖν: *things up to us*; or 'things under our power,' common use of ἐπί + dat.
 οὐδὲ δὴ (ἡ προαίρεσις) δόξα ἂν εἴη: *nor indeed might (choice) be opinion*; potential opt. εἰμί; the fourth of four options listed in 1111b9; δὴ is emphatic
 32 οὐδὲν ἥττον...ἢ: *no less...than...*; ἥττον is a comparative adv. and οὐδὲν is an adv. acc. (acc. of extent in degree, S1609)
 τὰ ἐφ' ἡμῖν: see line 30
 33 τῷ ψευδεῖ καὶ ἀληθεῖ: *by...*; dat. means διαιρεῖται: *is distinguished*
 τῷ κακῷ καὶ ἀγαθῷ: *by...*; dat. means δὲ: *but*
 34 τούτοις (διαιρεῖται): i.e. κακῷ καὶ ἀγαθῷ, dat. of means; supply verb

δόξῃ ταῦτόν ἴσως οὐδὲ λέγει οὐδεὶς. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τινί· τῷ γὰρ
 προαιρεῖσθαι ἀγαθὰ ἢ τὰ κακὰ ποιοί τινές ἐσμεν, τῷ δὲ
 δοξάζειν οὐ. καὶ προαιρούμεθα μὲν λαβεῖν ἢ φυγεῖν [ἢ] τι
 τῶν τοιούτων, δοξάζομεν δὲ τί ἐστὶν ἢ τίνι συμφέρει ἢ πῶς·
 λαβεῖν δ' ἢ φυγεῖν οὐ πάνυ δοξάζομεν. καὶ ἡ μὲν προ- 5
 αῖρεσις ἐπαινείται τῷ εἶναι οὐ δεῖ μᾶλλον ἢ τῷ ὀρθῶς,
 ἡ δὲ δόξα τῷ ὡς ἀληθῶς. καὶ προαιρούμεθα μὲν ἂ μάλιστα
 ἴσμεν ἀγαθὰ ὄντα, δοξάζομεν δὲ ἂ οὐ πάνυ ἴσμεν· δοκοῦσι
 δὲ οὐχ οἱ αὐτοὶ προαιρεῖσθαι τε ἄριστα καὶ δοξάζειν, ἀλλ'
 ἔνιοι δοξάζειν μὲν ἄμεινον, διὰ κακίαν δ' αἰρεῖσθαι οὐχ ἂ 10
 δεῖ. εἰ δὲ προγίνεται δόξα τῆς προαιρέσεως ἢ παρακολου-
 θεῖ, οὐδὲν διαφέρει· οὐ τοῦτο γὰρ σκοποῦμεν, ἀλλ' εἰ ταῦτόν

ἀληθῶς: truly, truthfully, 1

ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 2

ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
 δόξα, ἡ: opinion, 5

δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 6

ὀρθῶς: rightly, correctly, 4

1 ὅλως δόξῃ: *to opinion in general*; the contrast that follows is between general and particular opinion

ταῦτόν: τ(ὸ) αὐτό; αὐτός in the attributive position means 'same/ same as' + dat.

οὐδὲ λέγει οὐδεὶς: *not anyone in fact says (that choice is) ...*; οὐδε is an adv. (οὐ καί).

and οὐδεὶς is positive after οὐδέ

ἀλλὰ οὐδὲ τινί: *but neither (does anyone say that choice is the same) as a particular opinion*; dat. sg. indefinite τις

τῷ προαιρεῖσθαι τ(ὰ) ἀγαθὰ ἢ τὰ κακὰ: *by..., because of...*; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause

2 ποιοί τινές: i.e. our character, indefinite ποιός and τις

ἐσμεν: 1p pres. εἰμί

τῷ δοξάζειν: articular inf. and dat. of cause

3 οὐ (ποιοί τινές ἐσμεν): supply verb and pred.

λαβεῖν, φυγεῖν: aor. inf. λαμβάνω, φεύγω

4 δέ: *but*

τί ἐστὶν: ind. question

τίνι συμφέρει: *to whom it...*; ind. question

πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6

παρ-ακολουθεῖν: follow along, accompany, 2

ποιός, -ά, -όν: of such sort, of such kind, 4

προ-γίγνομαι: come/be born before (gen), 1

σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5

συμ-φέρω: be useful, be expedient, 1

with dat. of interest

6 τῷ εἶναι: *by..., because of...*; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause

οὐ δεῖ (προαιρεῖσθαι): *(that) which one ought to choose*;

τῷ ὀρθῶς (προαιρεῖσθαι): same as above

7 τῷ ὡς ἀληθῶς (δοξάζειν): *by...*; same as above; ὡς ἀληθῶς is equiv. to ἀληθῶς

ἅ...ὄντα: *what...*; i.e. '(the things) which,'

8 ἴσμεν: 1p οἶδα

ἅ...ἴσμεν: see above

9 οἱ αὐτοί: *the same people*

ἄριστα: *very well*; superlative adv. that modifies both infinitives

10 ἔνιοι (δοκοῦσι): add verb

ἄμεινον: comparative adv.

ἅ...: see above

11 δεῖ: *one ought*

12 οὐδὲν: *not at all*; inner acc. (no difference)

εἰ: *whether...*; ind. question governed by σκοποῦμεν

ταῦτόν: τ(ὸ) αὐτό; αὐτός in the attributive position means 'same/ same as' + dat.

ἐστὶ δόξη τινί. τί οὖν ἢ ποῖόν τι ἐστίν, ἐπειδὴ τῶν εἰρημένων
οὐθέν; ἐκούσιον μὲν δὴ φαίνεται, τὸ δ' ἐκούσιον οὐ πᾶν προ-
αιρετόν. ἀλλ' ἄρα γε τὸ προβεβουλευμένον; ἡ γὰρ προ- 15
αἵρεσις μετὰ λόγου καὶ διανοίας. ὑποσημαίνειν δ' ἔοικε
καὶ τοῦνομα ὡς ὃν πρὸ ἐτέρων αἰρετόν.

3. Βουλευόνται δὲ πότερον περὶ πάντων, καὶ πᾶν βουλευ-
τόν ἐστιν, ἢ περὶ ἐνίων οὐκ ἔστι βουλή; λεκτέον δ' ἴσως βου-
λευτόν οὐχ ὑπὲρ οὗ βουλευσάιτ' ἂν τις ἡλίθιος ἢ μαινόμενος, 20
ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ ὧν ὁ νοῦν ἔχων. περὶ δὴ τῶν αἰδίων οὐδεὶς βου-
λεύεται, οἷον περὶ τοῦ κόσμου ἢ τῆς διαμέτρου καὶ τῆς
πλευρᾶς, ὅτι ἀσύμμετροι. ἀλλ' οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν ἐν κινήσει,
αἰεὶ δὲ κατὰ ταῦτά γινομένων, εἴτ' ἐξ ἀνάγκης εἴτε καὶ 24

ἀεὶ: always, forever, in every case, 6
αἰδῖος, -ον: eternal, 2
αἰρετός, -ή, -όν: choiceworthy, chosen, 5
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, compulsion, 3
ἄρα: introduces a yes/no question, 2
ἀ-σύμ-μετρος, -ον: incommensurate, 1
βουλευτός, -ή, -όν: able to be deliberated, 6
βουλή, ἡ: deliberation, 4
δια-μέτρος, ὁ: diagonal, diameter, 1
δια-νοία, ἡ: intellect, thought, 2
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, 5
εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 4
ἐπει-δή: since; because; when, 1
ἡλίθιος, -ον: foolish, silly; idle, vain, 2

13 τι: *at all*; indefinite τις, τι lends emphasis
to interrogative ποῖος
ἐστίν: assume προαίρεσις as subject
τῶν εἰρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω
(ἔρέω); i.e. whether ἡ προαίρεσις is
ἐπιθυμία, θυμὸς, βούλησις, and δόξα.
14 οὐθέν: οὐδέν; nom. pred. ἐστίν
φαίνεται: supply ἡ προαίρεσις as subject
προαιρετόν (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
15 ἀλλ(ὰ) ἄρα γε: *but is it...?*; γε, often left
untranslated, lends emphasis and liveliness
τὸ προβεβουλευμένον: pf. pass. pple
ἡ γὰρ προαίρεσις (ἐστίν)
ὑποσημαίνειν: *to imply (it)*; add object
17 τοῦνομα: τ(ὸ) ὄνομα; i.e. προ-αἵρεσις
ὡς...: *on the grounds of...; or 'since...'* ὡς

κινέω: to set in motion, move, 4
κόσμος, ὁ: order, world, 1
λεκτέος, -ον: to be called or said, 2
μαίνομαι: to mad, rage, be furious, 3
μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
νοῦς, ὁ: sense; mind, attention, 4
ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 6
πλευρά, ἡ: side, 1
πότερος, -α, -ον: whether, which (of two)? 5
προ-αιρετός, -ή, -όν: chosen, 6
προ-βουλεύω: to deliberate beforehand, 1
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); beyond, 5
ὑπο-σημαίνω: to indicate, imply, 1

+ pple (εἰμί) expresses alleged cause from a
character's (or imagined) point of view.
18 Βουλευόνται δὲ πότερον: *Do (people)*
deliberate...; the verb is used proleptically
and should logically come after πότερον.
λεκτέον δ' ἴσως βουλευτόν οὐχ ὑπὲρ οὗ...:
"*to be deliberated*" *perhaps must not be*
said on behalf of what...
βουλευσάιτ' ἂν: *would...*; aor. potential opt.
21 ὁ νοῦν ἔχων: *one...*; i.e. a sensible person
τῶν αἰδίων: *eternal things*
ὅτι ἀσύμμετροι (εἰσίν): *that (they are)...*
23 οὐδὲ περὶ...γινομένων: *nor about things*
being in motion always
24 κατὰ τὰ αὐτά: *uniformly*; 'in respect to
the same things'

φύσει ἢ διὰ τινα αἰτίαν ἄλλην, οἷον τροπῶν καὶ ἀνατο- 25
 λῶν. οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν ἄλλοτε ἄλλως, οἷον αὐχμῶν καὶ ὄμ-
 βρων. οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τύχης, οἷον θησαυροῦ εὐρέσεως.
 ἀλλ' οὐδὲ περὶ τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων ἀπάντων, οἷον πῶς ἂν Σκύ-
 θαι ἄριστα πολιτεύοιντο οὐδεὶς Λακεδαιμονίων βουλεύεται.
 οὐ γὰρ γένοιτ' ἂν τούτων οὐθὲν δι' ἡμῶν. βουλευόμεθα δὲ περὶ 30
 τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν καὶ πρακτῶν· ταῦτα δὲ καὶ ἔστι λοιπά. αἰτίαι
 γὰρ δοκοῦσιν εἶναι φύσις καὶ ἀνάγκη καὶ τύχη, ἔτι δὲ
 νοῦς καὶ πᾶν τὸ δι' ἀνθρώπου. τῶν δ' ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστοι
 βουλεύονται περὶ τῶν δι' αὐτῶν πρακτῶν. καὶ περὶ μὲν τὰς

αἰτία, ἡ: reason, cause, responsibility, 7
 ἄλλ-οτε: at another time, at other times, 1
 ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 5
 ἀνα-τολή, ἡ: sunrise, rise; east, 1
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, compulsion, 3
 ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: human, of a human, 2
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
 αὐχμός, ὁ: draught, 1
 εὔρεσις, -εως, ἡ: finding, discovery, 2
 θησαυρός, ὁ: treasure, store, 1

25 φύσει-ι: dat. of means, φύσις
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 τροπῶν: *solstices*; 'turns,' a technical
 meaning for an otherwise common noun
 26 τῶν ἄλλοτε ἄλλως: *things at different
 times in different ways*; 'at one time in one
 way...at another time in another way' S1274
 27 τῶν ἀπὸ τύχης: *things...*
 εὐρέσεως: gen. sg., modified by θησαυροῦ
 27 ἄλλ(ᾷ) οὐδὲ: *but...not*; translate separately
 πῶς ἂν...πολιτεύοιντο: *how...would...*;
 ind. question governed by βουλεύεται;
 with 3p pres. potential opt.
 ἄριστα: superlative adv.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, -α, -ον: Lacedaemonian, 1
 νοῦς, ὁ: sense; mind, attention, 4
 ὄμβρος, ὁ: rainstorm, 1
 πολιτεύω: govern, administer the state, 1
 πρακτά, τά: things to be done; matters of
 moral actions, 4
 Σκύθης, -ου ὁ: a Scythian, 1
 τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5
 τύχη, ἡ: chance, luck, fortune, 3

30 γένοιτ(ο) ἂν: *would...*; aor. potential opt.
 γίγνομαι
 οὐθὲν: οὐδὲν
 δι(ᾷ) ἡμῶν: i.e. through our own actions
 31 τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν: *things up to us*; or 'things
 under our power,' common use of ἐπί + dat.
 32 καί: *in fact, actually*; adv.
 33 νοῦς: *intellect*
 πᾶν: *everything*
 τὸ δι(ᾷ) ἀνθρώπου: in attributive position
 modifying πᾶν
 34 δι(ᾷ) (ἐ)αυτῶν: reflexive; i.e. by their own
 agency

ἀκριβείς καὶ αὐτάρκεις τῶν ἐπιστημῶν οὐκ ἔστι βουλή, οἶον
 περὶ γραμμάτων (οὐ γὰρ διστάζομεν πῶς γραπτέον)· ἀλλ’
 ὅσα γίνεται δι’ ἡμῶν, μὴ ὡσαύτως δ’ αἰεί, περὶ τούτων βου-
 λευόμεθα, οἶον περὶ τῶν κατ’ ἰατρικὴν καὶ χρηματιστικὴν,
 καὶ περὶ κυβερνητικὴν μᾶλλον ἢ γυμναστικὴν, ὅσῳ ἥττον 5
 δηκρίζονται, καὶ ἔτι περὶ τῶν λοιπῶν ὁμοίως, μᾶλλον δὲ
 καὶ περὶ τὰς τέχνας ἢ τὰς ἐπιστήμας· μᾶλλον γὰρ περὶ
 ταύτας διστάζομεν. τὸ βουλευέσθαι δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
 πολύ, ἀδήλοις δὲ πῶς ἀποβήσεται, καὶ ἐν οἷς ἀδιόριστον.
 συμβούλους δὲ παραλαμβάνομεν εἰς τὰ μεγάλα, ἀπιστοῦν- 10
 τες ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ὡς οὐχ ἱκανοῖς διαγινώσκειν. βουλευόμεθα
 δ’ οὐ περὶ τῶν τελῶν ἀλλὰ περὶ τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη. οὕτε

ἄ-δηλος, -η, -ον: unclear, not evident, 1
 ἄ-διόριστος, -ον: undefined, undetermined, 1
 ἄ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (dat.), 1
 αἰεί: always, forever, in every case, 6
 ἀκριβής, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 4
 ἀπο-βαίνω: to turn out, result, 1
 αὐτάκης, -ες: self-sufficient, independent, 1
 βουλή, ἡ: deliberation, 4
 γράμμα, -ατος, τό: (alphabetical) letter, 1
 γραπτέος, -ον: to be written, 1
 γυμναστική, ἡ: gymnastics, athletic training, 1
 δια-γινώσκω: to decide, resolve, judge, 1

δια-κριβόω: to examine accurately, 1
 διστάζω: to doubt, hesitate, 2
 ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: knowledge, understanding, 4
 ἱατρική, ἡ: the art of medicine, 2
 ἱκανός, -ή, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable, 1
 κυβερνητική, ἡ: navigation, art of steering, 2
 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7
 παρα-λαμβάνω: to receive alongside, 1
 σύμ-βουλος, ὁ: co-deliberators, adviser, 1
 χρηματιστική, ἡ: business, money-making, 1
 ὡς-αὕτως: in the same manner, just so, 2

- 1 ἀκριβείς καὶ αὐτάρκεις: *defined and independent*
 τῶν ἐπιστημῶν: *branches of knowledge*;
 ‘of knowledges’
 οἶον: *for example*; ‘in respect to which sort’
- 2 γραμμάτων: i.e. orthography
 γραπτέον (ἔστιν): *it must...; ‘it is to...’*
 impersonal verbal adj.
- 3 ὅσα...αἰεί: *as many things as...; relative*
 with missing antecedent
 δι(ὰ) ἡμῶν: i.e. through our own actions
 μὴ ὡσαύτως δ(ὲ) αἰεί: *and not...; in the*
 same relative clause; general relative
 clauses govern μὴ instead of οὐ
- 4 κατ(ὰ)...: *in (respect to)...*
- 5 ὅσῳ: *inasmuch as...; ‘by as much as’*
 ἥττον: comparative adv.
- 6 δηκρίζονται: 3s pf. pass.
- 7 τὰς ἐπιστήμας: *branches of knowledge*

- 8 τὸ βουλευέσθαι (ἔστιν): *articular inf. (-ing);*
 supply verb
 ἐν τοῖς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ: *in matters*
(occurring) generally; ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ is in
 the attributive position and means ‘for the
 most part’ or ‘in general’
- 9 ἀδήλοις δὲ: *but...; modifying τοῖς*
 ἀποβήσεται: fut. dep. ἀποβαίνω
 τοῖς ἀδιόριστον: *matters undetermined*
- 10 εἰς: *in regard to...*
- 11 ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς: reflexive, dat. obj. of ppl
 ὡς...ικανοῖς (οὕσι): *on the grounds of*
(being)...; or ‘since’ ὡς + ppl (add εἰμί)
 expresses alleged cause; ἱκανοῖς is dat.
 pred. with explanatory (epexegetical) aor.
 inf. that qualifies the pred.
- 12 τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη: *things toward the ends*;
 i.e. the means

γὰρ ἰατρὸς βουλευέται εἰ ὑγιάσει, οὔτε ῥήτωρ εἰ πείσει,
οὔτε πολιτικὸς εἰ εὐνομίαν ποιήσει, οὐδὲ τῶν λοιπῶν οὐδεὶς
περὶ τοῦ τέλους· ἀλλὰ θέμενοι τὸ τέλος τὸ πῶς καὶ διὰ τίνων 15
ἔσται σκοποῦσι· καὶ διὰ πλειόνων μὲν φαινομένου γίνεσθαι
διὰ τίνος ῥᾶστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἐπισκοποῦσι, δι' ἐνὸς δ' ἐπι-
τελουμένου πῶς διὰ τούτου ἔσται κάκεινο διὰ τίνος, ἕως ἂν
ἔλθωσιν ἐπὶ τὸ πρῶτον αἴτιον, ὃ ἐν τῇ εὑρέσει ἔσχατόν
ἐστίν. ὁ γὰρ βουλευόμενος ἔοικε ζητεῖν καὶ ἀναλύειν τὸν 20
εἰρημένον τρόπον ὥσπερ διάγραμμα (φαίνεται δ' ἡ μὲν
ζήτησις οὐ πᾶσα εἶναι βούλευσις, οἶον αἱ μαθηματικάί, ἡ
δὲ βούλευσις πᾶσα ζήτησις), καὶ τὸ ἔσχατον ἐν τῇ ἀνα-
λύσει πρῶτον εἶναι ἐν τῇ γενέσει. κἂν μὲν ἀδυνάτω ἐν- 24

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον: incapable; impossible, 4
αἷτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 9
ἀνα-λύω: to resolve, analyze, undo, 1
ἀνά-λυσις, -εως, ἡ: resolution, analysis, 1
βούλευσις, -εως, ἡ: deliberation, 3
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: beginning, generation, 3
διά-γραμμα, -ατος, τό: geometric figure, 1
εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9
ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
ἐν-τυχᾶνω: chance upon, encounter (dat.) 1
ἐπι-σκοπέω: consider in addition, examine, 2
ἐπι-τελέω: to complete, finish, accomplish, 2
ἔσχατος, -η, -ον: last, 2
εὐ-νομία, ἡ: good order, 1

13 εἰ ὑγιάσει: *whether...*; add obj. 'someone'
εἰ πείσει...εἰ...ποιήσει: see l. 13; fut. πείθω
14 οὐδὲ...οὐδεὶς: *nor...anyone*
τῶν λοιπῶν: i.e. professions; orators, etc.
15 τέλους: τέλεος, gen. sg.
θέμενοι τὸ τέλος: aor. mid. ppl. τίθημι
τὸ πῶς καὶ διὰ τίνων ἔσται: *how...*; 'the
how and the...' ind. questions with fut. εἰμί;
interrogatives may take an article when the
question is about a topic (here, τέλος) just
discussed (S1186)
16 (τοῦ τέλους) διὰ...φαινομένου γίνεσθαι:
(*if the end*)...; gen. abs. conditional in sense,
supply the gen. subject
διὰ πλειόνων: *through many (means)*
17 διὰ τίνος...κάλλιστα (τὸ τέλος ἔσται):
ind. question with two superlative advs.;

εὑρεσις, -εως, ἡ: finding, discovery, 2
ἕως: until, as long as, 2
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 4
ζήτησις, -εως, ἡ: a seeking; inquiry, 2
ἰατρός, ὁ: physician, doctor, 3
κάλλιστος, -η, -ον: most noble or beautiful, 4
μαθηματικός, -ός, -όν: fond of learning, 1
πειθω: to persuade; *mid.* obey, 2
πολιτικός, ὁ: statesman, politician, 1
ῥᾶστα: most easily, 2
ῥήτωρ, ὁ: orator, (public) speaker, 1
σκοπέω: to look at, examine, consider, 5
τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5
υγιάζω: to make healthy, sound, 1

add subject and verb
(τοῦ τέλους) δι' ἐνὸς δ' ἐπιτελουμένου: *but*
(*if the end*)...; gen. abs. conditional; gen. εἷς
18 πῶς διὰ τούτου ἔσται (ἐπισκοποῦσι): ind.
question, supply verb from above; the
subject is τέλος and τούτου refers to the
means (δι' ἐνὸς)
κα(ὶ) ἐκεῖνο διὰ τίνος (ἔσται): *and through*
what that (means) will come to be
ἕως ἂν ἔλθωσιν: general temporal with ἄν
+ aor. subj. ἔρχομαι
20 τὸν τρόπον: *in...*; adv. acc. pf. ppl. λέγω
23 δὲ: *but*
τὸ ἔσχατον (ἔοικε)...πρῶτον: *the last step*
in... is the first step in...; plan, then execute
24 κ(αὶ) (ἐ)άν...: *and if...*
ἀδυνάτω: *an impossibility*; dat. compound

τύχωσιν, ἀφίστανται, οἶον εἰ χρημάτων δεῖ, ταῦτα δὲ μὴ 25
οἶόν τε πορισθῆναι· ἐὰν δὲ δυνατὸν φαίνεται, ἐγχειροῦσι
πράττειν. δυνατὰ δὲ ἂ δι' ἡμῶν γένοιτ' ἂν· τὰ γὰρ διὰ
τῶν φίλων δι' ἡμῶν πως ἐστίν· ἡ γὰρ ἀρχὴ ἐν ἡμῖν. ζη-
τεῖται δ' ὅτε μὲν τὰ ὄργανα ὅτε δ' ἡ χρεία αὐτῶν·
ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς λοιποῖς ὅτε μὲν δι' οὐδ' ὅτε δὲ πῶς 30
ἢ διὰ τίνος. ἔοικε δὲ, καθάπερ εἴρηται, ἄνθρωπος εἶναι
ἀρχὴ τῶν πράξεων· ἡ δὲ βουλή περὶ τῶν αὐτῷ πρακτῶν,
αἱ δὲ πράξεις ἄλλων ἔνεκα. οὐ γὰρ ἂν εἴη βουλευτὸν τὸ
τέλος ἀλλὰ τὰ πρὸς τὰ τέλη· οὐδὲ δὴ τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα,

ἀφ-ίστημι: set apart, remove; *mid.* withdraw 4
βουλευτός, -ή, -όν: able to be deliberated, 6
βουλή, ἡ: deliberation, 4
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, capable, possible, 5
ἐγ-χειρέω: to take in hand, begin, 1
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 4
καθ-άπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6
ὄργανον, τό: tool, instrument, 1

25 ἀφίστανται: 3p pres. *mid.*; add 'the task'
as object

οἶον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
δεῖ: *one lacks*; personal + gen. of separation

26 οἶόν τε (ἐστίν): *it is not possible* + inf.; 'it
is such sort to...' οἶός τε εἰμί is an idiom
equiv. to 'be able' or 'be possible'

πορισθῆναι: aor. dep. inf. πορίζω
ἐὰν δὲ...: *but if...*; pres. general condition
(ἐάν + subj., pres. ind.)

27 δυνατὰ (ἐστίν): *possible things (are)...*

ἂ...γένοιτο(ο) ἂν: *what...would...*; '(that)
which...' relative clause; the missing
antecedent is nom. pred.; potential aor. opt.
γίγνομαι

δι(ὰ) ἡμῶν: i.e. through our own actions
τὰ διὰ τῶν φίλων: *the things (done)...*;

28 δι(ὰ) ἡμῶν: nom. pred.

ἡ ἀρχὴ (ἐστίν): *the source...*

29 ζητεῖται: *we investigate*; 'it is sought,' 3s
pass. but best translated in active voice

ὅτε μὲν...ὅτε δ(ὲ): *sometimes...sometimes...*

30 καί: *also*

ἐν τοῖς λοιποῖς (ζητεῖται): *in other cases*

ὅτε: sometimes, at times (ποτέ), 9
πορίζω: to procure, provide, furnish, 1
πρακτά, τά: things to be done; matters of
moral actions, 4
φίλος -η -ον: dear, friendly; *noun* friend, kin 3
χρεία, ἡ: use; employment, 1
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: money; property, 5

(*we investigate*)...

ὅτε μὲν...ὅτε δ(ὲ): *sometimes...sometimes*
δι(ὰ) οὗ: *through what means (the end will*
be achieved); heavy ellipsis explained by
by line 1112b18

πῶς: *how (the end will be achieved through*
the means)

διὰ τίνος: *through what means (the mean*
will be achieved)

31 δὲ: *therefore, then*; inferential
εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)

32 ἀρχή: *origin*
ἡ βουλή (ἐστίν)

(ἐ)αυτῷ: *by oneself*; dat. of agent with
verbal adj. (here made a substantive)

33 ἄλλων ἔνεκα (εἰσίν): nom. pred.; i.e. for
the sake of ends other than themselves
ἂν εἴη: *would...*; potential opt. εἰμί

34 τὰ πρὸς τὰ τέλη: i.e. the means; the second
nom. subj.; βουλευτὸν is the predicate
οὐδὲ δὲ: *nor then*; δὲ is inferential
τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα (ἂν εἴη βουλευτὸν):
'*particular things*' 'things each by each,'
supply verb and pred.

οἷον εἰ ἄρτος τοῦτο ἢ πέπεπται ὥς δεῖ αἰσθήσεως γὰρ ταῦτα. εἰ δὲ αἰεὶ βουλευσεται, εἰς ἄπειρον ἤξει. βουλευ- τὸν δὲ καὶ προαιρετὸν τὸ αὐτό, πλὴν ἀφωρισμένον ἤδη τὸ προαιρετόν· τὸ γὰρ ἐκ τῆς βουλῆς κριθέν προαιρετόν ἐστιν. παύεται γὰρ ἕκαστος ζητῶν πῶς πράξει, ὅταν εἰς 5 αὐτὸν ἀναγάγῃ τὴν ἀρχήν, καὶ αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ ἡγούμενον· τοῦτο γὰρ τὸ προαιρούμενον. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἀρχαίων πολιτειῶν, ὡς Ὅμηρος ἐμμείτο· οἱ γὰρ βασι- λεῖς ἃ προείλοντο ἀνήγγελλον τῷ δήμῳ. ὄντος δὲ τοῦ προαιρετοῦ βουλευτοῦ ὀρεκτοῦ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῖν, καὶ ἡ προαίρεσις 10 ἂν εἴη βουλευτικὴ ὀρεξις τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῖν· ἐκ τοῦ βουλευσασθαι γὰρ κρίναντες ὀρεγόμεθα κατὰ τὴν βούλευσιν. ἡ μὲν οὖν

αἰεῖ: always, forever, in every case, 6
αἰσθήσεις, -εως, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7
ἀν-αγγέλλω: report, carry back (word), 1
ἀν-άγω: to lead back, trace back, 2
ἄρτος, ὁ: bread, loaf, 1
ἀρχαῖος, -α, -ον: ancient, 1
ἄ-πειρος, -ον: infinite, 2
ἀφ-ορίζω: to define, determine, mark off, 3
βασιλεύς, -έως ὁ: king, chief, 1
βούλευσις, -εως, ἡ: deliberation, 3
βουλευτικός, -ή, -όν: deliberative, 1
βουλευτός, -ή, -όν: able to be deliberated, 6
βουλή, ἡ: deliberation, 4
δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9
δῆμος, ὁ: people, 1
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 4

1 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
τοῦτο (ἐστίν): *is this object...*; subject
πέπεπται: pf. pass. πέπτω
ὥς...: *as...*; clause of comparison
αἰσθήσεως (ἐστίν): (*objects*) *of perception*
2 εἰ (ταῦτα)...βουλευσεται...ἤξει: *if (these particulars are...; fut. more vivid (εἰ fut., fut.); translate the fut. protasis as pres.*
βουλευτὸν: *object of deliberation*
2 πραιετόν: *object of choice*
3 τὸ αὐτό (ἐστίν): pred.; αὐτός in the attributive position means 'same'
ἀφωρισμένον (ἐστίν): i.e. is decided; pf. pass. ἀφ-ορίζω
4 τὸ...κριθέν: *the thing...*; neut. aor. pple

ἡγέομαι: to lead; consider, believe (dat), 1
ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 4
ἥκω: to have come, be present, 3
κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6
μιμέομαι: to imitate, mimic, represent, 2
Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 4
ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
ὀρετός, -ή, -όν: desired, longed for (gen), 1
ὀρεξις, ἡ: desire, longing, striving, 5
ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 7
παύω: to stop, make cease; *mid. cease*, 2
πέττω: to bake, cook; ripen (by heat), 1
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 6
πολιτεία, ἡ: constitution, government, 3
προ-αιρετός, -ή, -όν: chosen, 6

5 παύεται: *ceases from* + pple
πράξει: fut. πράττω
ὅταν...ἀναγάγῃ: *whenever...*; general temporal clause with 3s aor. subj.
εἰς (ἐ)αυτὸν: reflexive
6 ἀρχήν: *the origin (of action)*; i.e. lead from the τέλος, through the means, to the ἀρχή
αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ ἡγούμενον: *the leading (part) of himself*; i.e. the intellect
7 τὸ προαιρούμενον: (*the part*) *choosing*
δῆλον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
9 ἄ...: *what...*; 'that which' aor. προ-αίρέομαι
ὄντος...τοῦ προαιρετοῦ: *the chosen being worthy of deliberation, desired, in our power*
12 κατὰ...: *in accordance with...*

προαίρεσις τύπῳ εἰρήσθω, καὶ περὶ ποῖά ἐστι καὶ ὅτι τῶν
πρὸς τὰ τέλη.

4. Ἡ δὲ βούλησις ὅτι μὲν τοῦ τέλους ἐστὶν εἴρηται, δοκεῖ 15
δὲ τοῖς μὲν τὰγαθοῦ εἶναι, τοῖς δὲ τοῦ φαινομένου ἀγαθοῦ.
συμβαίνει δὲ τοῖς μὲν [τὸ] βουλευτὸν τὰγαθὸν λέγουσι μὴ
εἶναι βουλευτὸν ὃ βούλεται ὃ μὴ ὀρθῶς αἰρούμενος (εἰ γὰρ
ἔσται βουλευτόν, καὶ ἀγαθόν· ἦν δ', εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχε, κακόν),
τοῖς δ' αὖ τὸ φαινόμενον ἀγαθὸν βουλευτὸν λέγουσι μὴ 20
εἶναι φύσει βουλευτόν, ἀλλ' ἐκάστῳ τὸ δοκοῦν· ἄλλο δ'
ἄλλῳ φαίνεται, καὶ εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχε, τάναντία. εἰ δὲ διή-
ταῦτα μὴ ἀρέσκει, ἄρα φατέον ἀπλῶς μὲν καὶ κατ' ἀλή-
θειαν βουλευτὸν εἶναι τὰγαθόν, ἐκάστῳ δὲ τὸ φαινόμενον; 24

ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 5

ἄρα: introduces a yes/no question, 2

ἀρέσκω: to be pleasing, satisfy, please, 1

αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 2

βούλησις, -εως, ἡ: wanting, want, 6

1 τύπῳ: *in...*; dat. of manner

εἰρήσθω: *let...*; 3s pf. pass. imperative

λέγω (ἑρέω) with three separate subjects

καί...καί...: *and...and...*

περὶ ποῖά ἐστίν: i.e. the objects of choice;
ind. question

ὅτι (ἡ προαίρεσις ἐστίν)...: *and that...*; ind.
disc. + gen. as predicate

τῶν πρὸς τὰ τέλη: *of things...*; i.e. means

15 Ἡ βούλησις ὅτι: *that Wanting...*; ind. disc.

as subject; βούλησις belongs in the clause

τοῦ τέλους: *of the end*; objective gen. as

predicate equiv. to 'is (a wanting) of...'

εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἑρέω)

16 τοῖς μὲν...τοῖς δέ...: *to some...to others...*;
dat. of reference (viewpoint)

τ(ὸ) ἀγαθοῦ: see note for τέλους above

τοῦ φαινομένου ἀγαθοῦ (εἶναι): see τέλους

17 συμβαίνει: subject is ὃ βούλεται...

τοῖς μὲν...λέγουσι: *for those...*; dat. of

interest and pres. pple

βουλευτὸν τ(ὸ) ἀγαθόν (εἶναι): ind. disc.

μὴ εἶναι: *not to be...*; complementary inf.;

μὴ + inf. is common if there is no ind. disc.

18 δ...αἰρούμενος: *what...*; '(that) which...'
the antecedent is subject of sentence

βουλευτός, -ή, -όν: (object) to be wished for, 7

ὀρθῶς: rightly, correctly, 4

συμβαίνει: to happen, occur, result, 8

τύπος, ὁ: mark, outline; sketch, 5

φατέος, -ον: to be said or called, 3

ὁ...αἰρούμενος: *the one...*; pres. mid. pple

εἰ...ἔσται, (ἔσται): *if it is..., (will) also...*;

emotional fut. more vivid (εἰ fut., fut.) εἰμί;

translate the protasis as pres. with fut. sense

19 ἦν δ', εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχε, κακόν: *but if it
happened in this way, (what was wished
for) was bad*; i.e. what one not choosing
correctly wishes for in the example above

20 τοῖς δέ...λέγουσι: *for those...*; dat. of
interest and pres. pple

τὸ φαινόμενον ἀγαθόν βουλευτὸν (εἶναι)

μὴ εἶναι φύσει βουλευτόν: parallel to II.14-5,

supply συμβαίνει ὃ βούλεται ὃ μὴ ὀρθῶς

αἰρούμενος as verb and subject

19 φύσει: by...; dat. of respect, φύσις

21 ἐκάστῳ: to...; dat. reference (viewpoint)

τὸ δοκοῦν (εἶναι ἀγαθόν): *what seems...*;

'the thing seeming...' pres. pple.

ἄλλο ἄλλῳ φαίνεται: *it appears different
to different people* (S1274)

23 φατέον (ἔστί): *ought we...*; '(is it) to...(by
us); impersonal verbal adj.: translate as act.

ἀπλῶς...καὶ κατὰ ἀλήθειαν: *without
qualification and in truth*; with βουλήτον

24 ἐκάστῳ...: *but to individuals what seems
(good)*;

τῷ μὲν οὖν σπουδαίῳ τὸ κατ' ἀλήθειαν εἶναι, τῷ δὲ φαύλῳ 25
 τὸ τυχόν, ὥσπερ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν σωμάτων τοῖς μὲν εὖ δια-
 κειμένοις ὑγιεινά ἐστι τὰ κατ' ἀλήθειαν τοιαῦτα ὄντα, τοῖς
 δ' ἐπινόσοις ἕτερα, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ πικρὰ καὶ γλυκέα καὶ
 θερμὰ καὶ βαρέα καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἕκαστα· ὁ σπουδαῖος γὰρ
 ἕκαστα κρίνει ὀρθῶς, καὶ ἐν ἐκάστοις τάληθες αὐτῷ φαίνε- 30
 ται. καθ' ἐκάστην γὰρ ἔξιν ἰδιά ἐστι καλὰ καὶ ἡδέα, καὶ
 διαφέρει πλείστον ἴσως ὁ σπουδαῖος τῷ τάληθες ἐν ἐκάστοις
 ὀρᾶν, ὥσπερ κανὼν καὶ μέτρον αὐτῶν ὢν. ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς
 δὲ ἡ ἀπάτη διὰ τὴν ἡδονὴν ἔοικε γίνεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ οὕσα

ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 5

ἀληθής, -ές: true, 8

ἀπάτη, ἡ: deceit, fraud, treachery, 1

βαρὺς, -εῖα, -ύ: heavy, 1

γλυκύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet; pleasant, 1

διά-κειμαι: to be disposed, 2

ἐπινόσος, -ον: unhealthy, prone to sickness, 1

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 1

ἴδιος, -α, -ον: peculiar, private, one's own, 5

κανὼν, -όνος ὁ: standard, rod, straight-edge, 1

25 τῷ σπουδαίῳ: *to...*; in apposition to the previous clause

τὸ κατ' ἀλήθειαν εἶναι: *what it is in truth*; articular inf.

τὸ τυχόν: *what it happens (to be)*; i.e. good or bad; neut. sg. pres. pple, τυγχάνω + inf. (here, a missing εἶναι) means 'happens to...'

26 καὶ: *also*

ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

τοῖς...διακειμένοις: *to those...*; i.e. to healthy people; dat. of reference; pres. pple

27 τὰ...ὄντα: *those things...*; neut. pple εἰμί;

τοιαῦτα is pred. of ὄντα

κατὰ: *in..., in respect to...*

τοῖς δ' ἐπινόσοις: *but...*; dat. of reference

28 (ὑγιεινά ἐστι) ἕτερα: ellipsis

30 ἕκαστα: *individual things*; or 'particular things'

κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6

μέτρον, τό: measure, 1

ὀράω: to see, look, behold, 6

ὀρθῶς: rightly, correctly, 4

πικρός, -ά, -όν: bitter; harp, 1

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, very many, greatest, 4

σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7

ὑγιεινός, -ή, -όν: sound, healthy, wholesome, 2

φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8

τ(ὸ) ἀληθές: *the truth*; 'the true'

31 καθ' ἐκάστην γὰρ ἔξιν ἰδιά: *peculiar in respect to to each disposition*; pred.

32 διαφέρει: *excels*

πλείστον: *very much*; adv. acc. (inner acc., 'makes the most difference')

τῷ...ὀρᾶν: *by...*; articular inf. (-ing)

α-contract verb

33 ὥσπερ...ὢν: *as if...*; nom. sg. pres. pple εἰμί; ὥσπερ is used to show that action in the main verb is being compared to an assumed case (S2087)

ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς: *among the masses (of people)*

34 (ἡ ἡδονή) οὐ οὕσα: *although not being (good), (pleasure)...*; pres. pple is concessive in sense; fem. sg. modifying the understood subject ἡδονή

ἀγαθὸν φαίνεται. αἰροῦνται οὖν τὸ ἡδὺ ὡς ἀγαθόν, τὴν δὲ
λύπην ὡς κακὸν φεύγουσιν.

5. Ὅντος δὴ βουλευτοῦ μὲν τοῦ τέλους, βουλευτῶν δὲ καὶ
προαιρετῶν τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος, αἱ περὶ ταῦτα πράξεις
κατὰ προαίρεσιν ἂν εἶεν καὶ ἐκούσιοι. αἱ δὲ τῶν ἀρετῶν 5
ἐνέργειαι περὶ ταῦτα. ἐφ' ἡμῖν δὴ καὶ ἡ ἀρετή, ὁμοίως
δὲ καὶ ἡ κακία. ἐν οἷς γὰρ ἐφ' ἡμῖν τὸ πράττειν, καὶ
τὸ μὴ πράττειν, καὶ ἐν οἷς τὸ ναι, καὶ τὸ ναί· ὥστ' εἰ τὸ
πράττειν καλὸν ὃν ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐστί, καὶ τὸ μὴ πράττειν ἐφ' ἡμῖν
ἔσται αἰσχρὸν ὃν, καὶ εἰ τὸ μὴ πράττειν καλὸν ὃν ἐφ' ἡμῖν, 10
καὶ τὸ πράττειν αἰσχρὸν ὃν ἐφ' ἡμῖν. εἰ δ' ἐφ' ἡμῖν τὰ
καλὰ πράττειν καὶ τὰ αἰσχρά, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὸ μὴ πράτ-

βουλευτός, -ή, -όν: able to be deliberated, 6
ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
ναί: yes, yea, 1

προ-αιρετός, -ή, -όν: chosen, 6
ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

- 1 ἀγαθόν: *a good thing*; nom. pred.
ὥς: *as*
2 ὥς: *as*
3 Ὅντος...τοῦ τέλους: gen. abs.
δή: *therefore, then*; inferential
βουλευτῶν...(ὄντων) τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος:
these means (being)...; gen. abs. with
missing linking pple: supply ὄντων
4 τῶν πρὸς τὸ τέλος: *the means*; 'things
toward the end'
ταῦτα: i.e. the means; τὰ πρὸς τὸ τέλος
5 κατὰ προαίρεσιν: *in (respect to) choice*;
first of two parts of the predicate
ἂν εἶεν: *would...*; 3p pres. potential opt. εἰμί
6 (εἰσὶν) περὶ ταῦτα: i.e. means; add verb
ἐφ' ἡμῖν (ἐστίν): *in our power*; or 'in us,'
δή καὶ: *then also*; inferential and adv.
7 ἐν οἷς...τὸ πράττειν: *in whatever*
(*circumstances*); relative clause, the
antecedent is missing
ἐφ' ἡμῖν (ἐστίν)
καί: *also*

- 8 τὸ μὴ πράττειν: *not to do*; supply verb and
pred. ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐστίν
ἐν οἷς τὸ μὴ (πράττειν ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐστίν), καὶ τὸ
ναί ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐστίν); i.e. and contrawise; one
expects a clause parallel to the clause above
(e.g. in whatever conditions not doing is in
our power, also doing is in our power) but
the unusual use of ναί after an article
suggests another translation (in whatever
conditions the word 'no' is in our power,
the word 'yes' is in our power)
εἰ...ἐστί,...ἔσται: mixed simple condition
(εἰ pres., fut.) εἰμί
9 καλὸν ὃν: *while...*; i.e. nobly;
circumstantial neut. pres. pple εἰμί and its
pred.; ἐφ' ἡμῖν is the pred. of the main verb
10 αἰσχρὸν ὃν: *while...*; i.e. shamefully;
circumstantial pple modifying τὸ μὴ
πράττειν and not the pred. of the main verb
(ἐστίν) ἐφ' ἡμῖν: supply verb
11 καί: *also, then*; marks an apodosis
(ἐστίν) ἐφ' ἡμῖν: supply verb

τειν, τοῦτο δ' ἦν τὸ ἀγαθοῖς καὶ κακοῖς εἶναι, ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἄρα
 τὸ ἐπιεικέσι καὶ φαύλοις εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λέγειν ὥς οὐδεὶς ἐκὼν
 πονηρὸς οὐδ' ἄκων μακάριος ἔοικε τὸ μὲν ψευδεῖ τὸ δ' ἀλη- 15
 θεῖ· μακάριος μὲν γὰρ οὐδεὶς ἄκων, ἡ δὲ μοχθηρία ἐκού-
 σιον. ἢ τοῖς γε νῦν εἰρημένοις ἀμφισβητητέον, καὶ τὸν
 ἀνθρωπον οὐ φατέον ἀρχὴν εἶναι οὐδὲ γεννητὴν τῶν πράξεων
 ὥσπερ καὶ τέκνων. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα φαίνεται καὶ μὴ ἔχομεν 20
 εἰς ἄλλας ἀρχὰς ἀναγαγεῖν παρὰ τὰς ἐν ἡμῖν, ὧν καὶ
 αἱ ἀρχαὶ ἐν ἡμῖν, καὶ αὐτὰ ἐφ' ἡμῖν καὶ ἐκούσια. τούτοις
 δ' ἔοικε μαρτυρεῖσθαι καὶ ἰδίᾳ ὑφ' ἐκάστων καὶ ὑπ' αὐτῶν
 τῶν νομοθετῶν· κολάζουσι γὰρ καὶ τιμωροῦνται τοὺς δρῶν-
 τας μοχθηρά, ὅσοι μὴ βία ἢ δι' ἄγνοιαν ἥς μὴ αὐτοὶ 24

ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον: involuntary, unwilling, 8
 ἀληθής, -ές: true, 8
 ἀμφισβητητέος, -ον: to be disputed, 1
 ἀν-άγω: to lead back, trace back, 2
 ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 6
 βία, βίας, ἡ: compulsion, force, 4
 γεννητής, -οῦ ὁ: begetter, parent, 1
 δράω: to do, 4
 ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8
 ἐκὼν, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: voluntarily, willing, 8
 ἐπι-εικής, -ές: fair, equitable, good, suitable, 2
 ἴδιος, -α, -ον: peculiar, private, one's own, 5
 κολάζω: to correct, punish, discipline, 5

μακάριος, -α, -ον: blessed, happy, 2
 μαρτυρέω: bear witness/evidence (+ dat.), 2
 μοχθηρία, ἡ: wickedness, 2
 μοχθηρός, -ή, -όν: wicked, 2
 νομο-θέτης, -ου ὁ: lawgiver, 2
 νῦν: now; as it is, 7
 παρὰ: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
 πονηρός, -ά, -όν: wicked, bad, grievous, 1
 τέκνον, τό: a child, 2
 τιμωρέω: to avenge, exact vengeance, 2
 φατέος, -ον: to be said or called, 3
 φαῦλος, -η -ον: bad, inferior, cheap, 8
 ψευδος, -εος, τό: falsehood, 2

13 τοῦτο δ' ἦν: *and this is really...*; 3s impf.
 εἰμί of a truth just realized (S1902), which is
 often present in English (e.g. was and still
 is) and accompanied by ἄρα; τοῦτο refers
 to doing and not doing καλὰ and αἰσχρά
 τὸ ἀγαθοῖς καὶ κακοῖς εἶναι: *being...*;
 articular inf. and pred.; ἀγαθοῖς, κακοῖς are
 predicates attracted into the dative by ἡμῖν
 ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἄρα (ἦν) τὸ...εἶναι: see note above
 ἐφ' ἡμῖν: *in our power*; 'in us'
 14 ὥς οὐδεὶς ἐκὼν (ἐστίν) πονηρὸς οὐδ' ἄκων
 (ἐστίν) μακάριος: *that...*; ind. disc.
 15 τὸ μὲν...τὸ δὲ: *(to speak) on the one
 hand (and) ...to (speak) on the other hand*
 ψευδεῖ... ἀληθεῖ: *in..., in...*; dat. of respect
 17 τοῖς...εἰρημένοις: *the things...*; dat. pf.
 pass. pple λέγω and obj. of verbal adj.
 γέ: *in fact*; here, an intensive of the dat.

ἀμφισβητητέον (ἐστίν): *we must...*; '(it is)
 to...(by us)' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰμί
 which is often translated in active voice
 18 οὐ φατέον: *we must deny...*, *we must say
 that...not*; οὐ applies within the ind. disc.
 ταῦτα φαίνεται: i.e. that man is the ἀρχή
 19 ἔχομεν: *we are able* + inf.; common idiom
 ἀναγαγεῖν: i.e. to lead from the τέλος
 through the means to the ἀρχή (cf. 1113a6)
 παρὰ τὰς (ἀρχὰς)...: *besides...*
 20 ὧν...ἡμῖν: *(the actions) whose...*; i.e the
 means; the missing antecedent is subject
 22 τούτοις...: *evidence seems to be given to
 these things*; it seems evidence is given'
 ἰδίᾳ ὑφ': *privately by...*; gen. of agent/cause
 24 ὅσοι...ἄγνοιαν: *as many as (are) not...*
 ἥς: *for which they themselves are not
 responsible*

αἵτιοι, τοὺς δὲ τὰ καλὰ πράττοντας τιμῶσιν, ὥς τοὺς μὲν 25
 προτρέψοντες τοὺς δὲ κωλύσοντες. καίτοι ὅσα μήτ' ἐφ'
 ἡμῖν ἐστὶ μήθ' ἐκούσια, οὐδεὶς προτρέπεται πράττειν, ὥς οὐδὲν
 πρὸ ἔργου ὄν τὸ πεισθῆναι μὴ θερμαίνεσθαι ἢ ἀλγείν ἢ
 πεινῆν ἢ ἄλλ' ὅτιοῦν τῶν τοιούτων· οὐθὲν γὰρ ἤττον πεισόμεθα
 αὐτά. καὶ γὰρ ἐπ' αὐτῷ τῷ ἀγνοεῖν κολάζουσιν, ἐὰν αἵτιος 30
 εἶναι δοκῇ τῆς ἀγνοίας, οἷον τοῖς μεθύουσι διπλᾶ τὰ ἐπι-
 τίμια· ἢ γὰρ ἀρχὴ ἐν αὐτῷ· κύριος γὰρ τοῦ μὴ μεθυ-
 σθῆναι, τοῦτο δ' αἷτιον τῆς ἀγνοίας. καὶ τοὺς ἀγνοοῦντάς τι
 τῶν ἐν τοῖς νόμοις, ἃ δεῖ ἐπίστασθαι καὶ μὴ χαλεπά ἐστι,

αἷτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 9
 ἀλγέω: to feel pain, suffer, grief, 2
 διπλός, -ή, -όν: twofold, 1
 ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8
 ἐπίσταμαι: know, know how, understand, 1
 ἐπι-τίμιον, τό: penalty, 2
 θερμαίνω: warm, heat; *mid.* be warm, hot, 1
 καί-το: and yet, and indeed, and further, 2
 κολάζω: to correct, punish, discipline, 5
 κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 2

25 τοὺς...πράττοντας: *those...*; pres. pple
 ὥς...προτρέχοντες...κωλύσοντες: *so that
 they may...*; 'so as going to...' ὥς + fut.
 pple (here, nom.) expressing purpose:
 translate as finite verbs or infinitives
 τοὺς δὲ...τοὺς δὲ: *some...others*; i.e. the
 τοὺς πράττοντας just mentioned
 26 ὅσα...ἐκούσια: *as many (actions) as...*;
 relative clause; the missing antecedent is
 acc. obj.
 μήτε...μήτε...: *neither...nor...*; μή is used
 instead of οὐ in a general relative clause
 ἐφ' ἡμῖν: *in our power*, or 'in us'
 27 προτρέπεται: pres. pass. + inf.
 ὥς...ὄν: *on the grounds that it is...*; or
 'since it is...' ὥς + pple (here, acc. abs. with
 neut. pple εἰμί) expresses alleged cause
 from another's point of view (i.e. *oudeis*);
 Greek employs an acc. rather than gen. abs.
 when the verb is impersonal. S2059, S2076
 οὐδὲν πρὸ ἔργου: *not at all useful*; 'not at
 all for the task,' adverbial acc. and predicate
 28 τὸ πεισθῆναι: articular aor. pass. inf.
 πείθω and logical subject of the acc. abs.

μεθύσκω: make drunk; *mid.* become drunk, 1
 μεθύω: to be drunk with wine, 3
 μή-τε: and not; neither...nor, 8
 νόμος, ὁ: law, custom, 2
 ὅστις-οὖν, ἥτις-οὖν, ὅτι-οὖν: *whosoever*, 5
 πείθω: to persuade; *mid.* obey, 2
 πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 3
 πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4
 προ-τρέπω: urge on or forward, turn to, 2
 τιμάω: to honor, value, esteem, 1

μὴ θερμαίνεσθαι...πεινῆν: complementary
 inf. governed by πεισθῆναι; πεινῆν
 (πεινά-ειν) is an α-contract inf.
 29 ὅτιοῦν: neut. ὅστις-οὖν
 οὐθὲν ἤττον: *no less*; 'less by nothing' adv.
 acc. (acc. of extent in degree, S1609) and
 comparative adv.
 πεισόμεθα: fut. mid. πάσχω
 30 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
 ἐπ(ι)...ἀγνοεῖν: *for...*; articular inf. (-ing)
 and intensive expressing motive (S1689.2c)
 30 κολάζουσιν: i.e. people in general
 ἐὰν...δοκῇ: *if he seems...*; a pres. general
 condition (ἐὰν + subj., fut.) δοκέω
 31 τῆς ἀγνοίας: *for...*; objective gen.
 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'
 32 τοῖς μεθύουσι: *for those...*; dat. interest,
 διπλᾶ (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 32 ἡ ἀρχὴ (ἐστίν): *the origin (is)*
 κύριος (ἐστίν): *(he is)...*; nom. pred.
 τοῦ...μεθυσθῆναι: articular inf., aor. pass.
 33 αἷτιον (ἐστίν): nom. pred.
 τοὺς ἀγνοοῦντάς: 2nd example from l. 29
 34 τῶν ἐν τοῖς νόμοις: *of matters in the laws*

κολάζουσιν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὅσα δι' ἀμέλειαν ἀγνοεῖν δοκοῦσιν, ὡς ἐπ' αὐτοῖς ὅν τὸ μὴ ἀγνοεῖν τοῦ γὰρ ἐπιμεληθῆναι κύριοι. ἀλλ' ἴσως τοιούτος ἐστὶν ὥστε μὴ ἐπιμεληθῆναι. ἀλλὰ τοῦ τοιούτους γενέσθαι αὐτοὶ αἴτιοι ζῶντες ἀνεμμένως, καὶ τοῦ ἀδίκους ἢ ἀκολάστους εἶναι, οἳ μὲν 5 κακουργοῦντες, οἳ δὲ ἐν πότοις καὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις διάγοντες· αἱ γὰρ περὶ ἕκαστα ἐνέργειαι τοιούτους ποιοῦσιν. τοῦτο δὲ δηλον ἐκ τῶν μελετώντων πρὸς ἡντινοῦν ἀγωνίαν ἢ πρᾶξιν· διατελοῦσι γὰρ ἐνεργοῦντες. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἀγνοεῖν ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ ἐνεργεῖν περὶ ἕκαστα αἱ ἕξεις γίνονται, κομιδῇ ἀναισθήτου. 10 ἔτι δ' ἄλογον τὸν ἀδικοῦντα μὴ βούλεσθαι ἀδικον εἶναι ἢ τὸν ἀκολασταίνοντα ἀκόλαστον. εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀγνοῶν τις πρᾶτ-

ἀγωνία, ἡ: contest; struggle for victory, 1
 ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 2
 ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 8
 αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 9
 ἀκολασταίνω: to be licentious, intemperate, 2
 ἄ-λογος, -ον: irrational, unreasonable, 4
 ἀ-μέλεια, ἡ: negligence, lack of concern, 2
 ἀν-αισθητός, -όν: ascetic; insensible, 5
 ἀνεμμένως: carelessly, at ease, laxidatically, 2
 δηλός, -ης, -ον: clear, evident, 9
 δι-άγω: to live, carry on, 1
 δια-τελέω: to continue, keep on, (+ pple) 1

ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
 ἐν-εργέω: to be active, actualize, operate, 5
 ἐπι-μελέομαι: pay attention, take care of, 2
 ζάω: to live, 4
 κακουργέω: to do bad, do evil, 1
 κολάζω: to correct, punish, discipline, 5
 κομιδῇ: just, precisely; quite, 1
 μελετάω: to train, practice, study, care for, 1
 ὅστις-οὖν, ἥτις-οὖν, ὅτι-οὖν: whosoever, 5
 πότος, ὁ: drinking, 1
 ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

- 1 ἄλλοις: *other instances, other cases*
 ὅσα...: *as many as...*; relative clause and neut. acc. obj. of ἀγνοεῖν
 2 ὡς ἐπὶ αὐτοῖς ὅν...: *on the grounds that it is...*; or 'since it is...' ὡς + pple (here, acc. abs. with neut. pple εἰμί) expresses alleged cause from another's point of view; Greek employs an acc. rather than gen. abs. when the verb is impersonal. S2059, S2076
 ἐπὶ: *in their power*; 'in them'
 τὸ...ἀγνοεῖν: articular inf. and logical subject
 3 τοῦ ἐπιμεληθῆναι: *of...*; articular aor. pass. dep. inf.
 κύριοι (εἰσίν)
 ὥστε...: *so as...*; result clause with aor. pass. dep. inf.
 4 τοῦ...γενέσθαι: *for...*; objective gen.
 αὐτοὶ (εἰσίν): *they themselves...*; intensive

- 5 τοῦ...εἶναι: *for...*; objective gen. modifying αἴτιοι
 οἳ μὲν...οἳ δὲ: *some...others...*; in apposition to αὐτοί; 'these...those' the accented article οἳ indicates that the article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)
 7 δηλον (ἐστίν): *experience*; perfect πάσχω
 8 μελετώντων: μελετάοντων; pres. pple
 πρὸς...: *in regard to...*
 ἡντινοῦν: fem. acc. sg. ὅστις-οὖν
 9 ἐκ τοῦ ἐνεργεῖν: articular inf. (-ing)
 κομιδῇ ἀναισθήτου (ἐστίν): *(is) of a quite insensible man*; i.e. foolish; gen. of quality as predicate perfect πάσχω
 11 ἄλογον (ἐστίν): *(it is)...*; impersonal
 τὸν ἀδικοῦντα μὴ...: *that one...*; ind. disc.
 12 τὸν ἀκολασταίνοντα (μὴ βούλεσθαι) ἀκόλαστον (εἶναι): *that...*; ind. disc. 1
 μὴ ἀγνοῶν τις: *someone not being ignorant*

τει ἐξ ὧν ἔσται ἄδικος, ἐκὼν ἄδικος ἂν εἴη, οὐ μὴν ἐάν γε
 βούληται, ἄδικος ὧν παύσεται καὶ ἔσται δίκαιος. οὐδὲ γὰρ
 ὁ νοσῶν ὑγίης. καὶ εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχεν, ἐκὼν νοσεῖ, ἀκρατῶς 15
 βιοτεύων καὶ ἀπειθῶν τοῖς ἰατροῖς. τότε μὲν οὖν ἐξῆν αὐτῷ
 μὴ νοσεῖν, προεμένῳ δ' οὐκέτι, ὥσπερ οὐδ' ἀφέντι λίθον ἔτ'
 αὐτὸν δυνατὸν ἀναλαβεῖν· ἀλλ' ὅμως ἐπ' αὐτῷ τὸ βαλεῖν
 [καὶ ῥῦναι]· ἡ γὰρ ἀρχὴ ἐν αὐτῷ. οὕτω δὲ καὶ τῷ ἀδίκῳ
 καὶ τῷ ἀκολάστῳ ἐξ ἀρχῆς μὲν ἐξῆν τοιούτοις μὴ γενέσθαι, 20
 διὸ ἐκόντες εἰσὶν· γενομένοις δ' οὐκέτι ἔστι μὴ εἶναι. οὐ μό-
 νον δ' αἱ τῆς ψυχῆς κακίαι ἐκούσιοί εἰσιν, ἀλλ' ἐνίοις καὶ
 αἱ τοῦ σώματος, οἷς καὶ ἐπιτιμῶμεν· τοῖς μὲν γὰρ διὰ
 φύσιν αἰσχροῖς οὐδεὶς ἐπιτιμᾷ, τοῖς δὲ δι' ἀγυμνασίαν καὶ 24

ἀ-γυμνασία, ἡ: lack of exercise, 1
 ἄ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 8
 ἀ-κρατῶς: incontinently, without control, 1
 ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to take up or back, 2
 ἀ-πειθέω: not to believe, not to trust, 1
 ἀφ-ίημι: to send/throw, let loose, 2
 βάλλω: throw, cast, hit, put, 1
 βιοτεύω: to live, 1
 δυνατός, -ή, -όν: able, capable, possible, 5
 ἐκὼν, ἐκούσα, ἐκόν: voluntarily, willing, 8
 ἐξ-εστί: it is permitted, is allowed, 2
 ἐπι-τιμᾶω: to blame, put a penalty on, 5
 ἱατρός, ὁ: physician, doctor, 3

13 ἐξ ὧν...: (actions) from which...; relative
 clause; the antecedent is obj. of πράττει
 ἔσται: fut. εἰμί
 ἂν εἴη: would...; potential opt. πάσχω
 οὐ μὴν: nor again; introduces a new point
 ἐάν γε...βουλήται, παύσεται: fut. more
 vivid condition (ἐάν + subj., fut.); γε
 emphasizes the entire protasis
 14 παύσεται: + complementary pple εἰμί
 ἔσται: fut. εἰμί
 οὐδὲ γὰρ: for neither
 15 ὁ νοσῶν (ἐάν βούληται, ἔσται) ὑγίης:
 parallel to ll. 13-14
 καὶ εἰ οὕτως ἔτυχεν: even if it...; concessive
 clause; i.e. even if he wants to be well
 16 βιοτεύων καὶ ἀπειθῶν: by...; causal pple
 τότε μὲν: i.e. early on
 ἐξῆν: impf. ἔ-εστί; i.e. in one's power

λίθος, ὁ: stone, 3
 μὴν: truly, surely, 5
 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 4
 νοσεῖω: to be sick, be ill, 3
 ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 1
 οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
 παύω: to stop, make cease; mid. cease, 2
 προ-ίημι: to let go, give up; mid. neglect, 1
 ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7
 τότε: then, at that time, 3
 ὑγίης, -ές: healthy, sound, wholesome, 1
 ψυχῇ, ἡ: soul, spirit; breath, life, 4

αὐτῷ: for...; dat. of interest, the sick man
 17 προεμένῳ δ': but for him...; aor. mid. pple
 προίημι modifying αὐτῷ
 οὐκέτι (ἐξ-εστί): (it is) no longer (possible)
 οὐδὲ: not even
 ἀφέντι λίθον: for one...; aor. pple ἀφίημι
 18 αὐτὸν: it; the stone
 δυνατὸν (ἐστί): (it is)...; impersonal
 ἐπ(ί) αὐτῷ (ἐστί): is in his power
 19 ἡ ἀρχή (ἐστί): the origin
 τῷ ἀδίκῳ...: for...; dat. of interest
 ἐξῆν: impf. ἔ-εστί; i.e. in one's power
 20 τοιούτοις: pred. of inf. attracted into dat.
 21 ἔστι: it is possible
 οὐ μόνον ...ἀλλὰ: not only...but
 22 ἐνίοις: for...; dat. of interest
 23 οἷς: on whom we lay blame; dat. compound
 τοῖς αἰσχροῖς: those ugly; dat. compound

ἀμέλειαν. ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ περὶ ἀσθένειαν καὶ πήρωσιν· οὐθὲς 25
 γὰρ ἂν ὀνειδίσκειε τυφλῷ φύσει ἢ ἐκ νόσου ἢ ἐκ πληγῆς,
 ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐλεήσει· τῷ δ' ἐξ οἰνοφλυγίας ἢ ἄλλης
 ἀκολασίας πᾶς ἂν ἐπιτιμήσαι. τῶν δὴ περὶ τὸ σῶμα
 κακιῶν αἱ ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἐπιτιμῶνται, αἱ δὲ μὴ ἐφ' ἡμῖν οὐ. εἰ
 δ' οὕτω, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄλλων αἱ ἐπιτιμώμεναι τῶν κακιῶν 30
 ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἂν εἶεν. εἰ δέ τις λέγοι ὅτι πάντες ἐφίενται τοῦ
 φαινομένου ἀγαθοῦ, τῆς δὲ φαντασίας οὐ κύριοι, ἀλλ' ὁποῖός

ἀ-μέλεια, ἡ: negligence, lack of concern, 2
 ἀ-σθένεια, ἡ: weakness, infirmity, 1
 ἐλεέω: to have pity, show mercy, 3
 ἐπι-τιμᾶω: to blame, put a penalty on, 5
 ἐφ-ίημι: *mid.* to aim at, desire (gen), 1
 νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5
 οἶνο-φλυγία, ἡ: drunkenness, 1

25 οὐθὲς: οὐδεὶς

ἂν ὀνειδίσκειε: *would...*; 3s aor. potential opt.

φύσει: *by...*; dat. of respect φύσις

26 ἢ...ἢ...: *either...or...*

ἐκ πληγῆς: *from an accident*; i.e from a stroke of misfortune

27 ἐλεήσει (ἂν): *would...*; 3s aor. potential opt.

τῷ δ': *but someone*; alternate form of indefinite τινί; here obj. of compound verb

28 ἂν ἐπιτιμήσαι: *would...*; 3s aor. potential opt.

τῶν...κακιῶν: *among...*; partitive gen.

δὴ: *then, therefore*; inferential

29 αἱ ἐφ' ἡμῖν (κακιὰ): *those...*; preposition phrase in the attributive position

ἐφ' ἡμῖν: *in our power*; 'up to us'

αἱ δὲ μὴ ἐφ' ἡμῖν κακιὰ): *but those...*

ὀνειδίζω: to reproach, rebuke (dat.) 1
 ὁποῖος, -α, -ον: of what sort or kind, 2
 πήρωσις, -εως, ἡ: disabling; mutilation, 1
 πληγή, ἡ: blow, strike, 1
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7
 τυφλός, -ή, -όν: blind, 1
 φαντασία, ἡ: appearance; imagination, 2

οὐ (ἐπιτιμῶνται)

30 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

αἱ ἐπιτιμώμεναι: *those...*; pass. pple

τῶν κακιῶν: partitive gen.

31 ἂν εἶεν: 3p pres. potential opt. εἰμί

εἰ δέ τις λέγοι: *Suppose someone should say...*; 'if someone should say,' protasis of extended ind. disc. (until 1114b12) with no apodosis. The following is a speech from an imagined objector.

ἐφίενται: 3p pres. mid. ἐφ-ίημι + gen.

32 κύριοι (εἰσίν): *(they are)...*

ὁποῖος πο(τε)...: *what in the world...*; i.e. character; a relative clause; the antecedent is the correlative and demonstrative τοιοῦτο; ποτε, 'in the world,' often used with interrogatives and relatives to express surprise or emphasis

ποθ' ἕκαστός ἐστι, τοιοῦτο καὶ τὸ τέλος φαίνεται αὐτῷ· εἰ
 μὲν οὖν ἕκαστος ἑαυτῷ τῆς ἑξέως ἐστὶ πως αἴτιος, καὶ τῆς
 φαντασίας ἔσται πως αὐτὸς αἴτιος· εἰ δὲ μὴ, οὐθεὶς αὐτῷ
 αἴτιος τοῦ κακοποιεῖν, ἀλλὰ δι' ἄγνοιαν τοῦ τέλους ταῦτα
 πράττει, διὰ τούτων οἰόμενος αὐτῷ τὸ ἄριστον ἔσεσθαι, ἡ 5
 δὲ τοῦ τέλους ἑφσεις οὐκ ἀνθαίρετος, ἀλλὰ φῦναι δεῖ ὥσπερ
 ὄψιν ἔχοντα, ἥ κρινεῖ καλῶς καὶ τὸ κατ' ἀλήθειαν ἀγα-
 θὸν αἰρήσεται, καὶ ἔστιν εὐφυῆς ὃ τοῦτο καλῶς πέφυκεν·
 τὸ γὰρ μέγιστον καὶ κάλλιστον, καὶ ὁ παρ' ἐτέρου μὴ οἶόν
 τε λαβεῖν μηδὲ μαθεῖν, ἀλλ' οἶον ἔφιν τοιοῦτον ἔξει, καὶ 10
 τὸ εὖ καὶ τὸ καλῶς τοῦτο πεφυκέναι ἢ τελεία καὶ ἀληθινῇ
 ᾧ εἴη εὐφυῖα. εἰ δὴ ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἀληθῆ, τί μᾶλλον ἢ

αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 9
 ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 5
 ἀληθής, -ές: true, 8
 ἀληθινός, -ή, -όν: truthful, true, real, 2
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
 αὐθ-αίρετος, -ή, -όν: self-chosen, of one's
 own choosing, 1
 εὐ-φυῆς, -ές: of a good natural disposition, 1
 εὐ-φυῖα, ἡ: good natural disposition, 1
 ἑφσεις, -εως, ἡ: aiming (at); desire for (gen.) 1
 κακο-ποιέω: to do wrong, treat badly, 1
 κάλλιστος, -η, -ον: most noble or beautiful, 4

Imagined objector's speech until l. 12.

- 1 τοιοῦτο καὶ: *this way also*; pred.,
 αὐτῷ: *to...*; dat. of reference (viewpoint)
- 2 ἑαυτῷ τῆς ἑξέως: dat. of interest and
 objective gen. with αἴτιος
 καὶ τῆς φαντασίας: *also for...*; obj. gen.
- 3 ἔσται: fut. εἰμί
 αὐτὸς: intensive pronoun
 οὐθεὶς (ἐστίν): οὐδεὶς ἐστίν
 (ἐ)αὐτῷ: *for...*; dat. of interest
 τοῦ κακοποιεῖν: *for...*; articular inf. (-ing)
 and objective gen.
 διὰ τούτων: i.e. bad deeds; same as ταῦτα
- 5 (ἐ)αὐτῷ...ἔσεσθαι: *that he will have...*;
 'will be for him' dat. possession + fut. εἰμί
- 6 δὲ: *but*
 ἀνθαίρετος (ἐστίν)
 φῦναι: *to be born (with the end)*; aor. inf.
 ὥσπερ: *as it were, so to speak*

καλῶς: well, nobly, 4
 κρίνω: to decide, judge, 6
 μαθάνω: to learn, understand, 3
 μέγιστος, -η, -ον: very large, greatest, most
 important, 4
 μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
 οἶμαι (οἶμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5
 ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision; appearance; face, 3
 παρὰ: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
 ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 2
 τέλειος, -α, -ον: perfect; completed, 1
 φαντασία, ἡ: appearance; imagination, 2

- 7 ὄψιν: i.e. moral vision or insight
 ἣ: *by which...*; relative and dat. of means
 κατ'(α): *in (respect to)*; 'in accordance with'
- 8 ὧ...: *the one to whom...*; dat. of interest; the
 missing antecedent is subject of ἔστιν
 πέφυκεν: *is disposed by nature* + inf.;
 'has grown by nature,' pf. φύω is often
 translated as 'is by nature' or 'is naturally'
- 9 τὸ γὰρ...πεφυκέναι: single pred. of ᾧ εἴη
 καὶ δ...ἔξει: *and (that) which...*; 3s fut. ἔχω
 οἶόν τε (ἐστίν): *it is possible* + inf.; 'it is
 such sort to...' οἶός τε εἰμί is an idiom
 equiv. to 'be able' or 'be possible'
- 10 λαβεῖν, μαθεῖν: aor. λαμβάνω, μαθάνω
 οἶον ἔφιν: *which sort was by nature (to him)*
 τὸ εὖ...πεφυκέναι: *this being disposed well*
and nobly by nature; art. inf. in apposition
- 12 ἂν εἴη: *would...*; potential opt.
 εἰ δὴ...: The objector's speech has ended

ἀρετὴ τῆς κακίας ἔσται ἐκούσιον; ἀμφοῖν γὰρ ὁμοίως, τῷ
 ἀγαθῷ καὶ τῷ κακῷ, τὸ τέλος φύσει ἢ ὅπωςδὴποτε φαί-
 νεται καὶ κείται, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ πρὸς τοῦτο ἀναφέροντες 15
 πράττουσιν ὅπωςδὴποτε. εἴτε δὴ τὸ τέλος μὴ φύσει ἐκάστω
 φαίνεται οἷονδὴποτε, ἀλλὰ τι καὶ παρ' αὐτόν ἐστιν, εἴτε
 τὸ μὲν τέλος φυσικόν, τῷ δὲ τὰ λοιπὰ πράττειν ἐκούσιως
 τὸν σπουδαῖον ἢ ἀρετὴ ἐκούσιόν ἐστιν, οὐθὲν ἦττον καὶ ἡ κα-
 κία ἐκούσιον ἂν εἴη· ὁμοίως γὰρ καὶ τῷ κακῷ ὑπάρχει 20
 τὸ δι' αὐτόν ἐν ταῖς πράξεσι καὶ εἰ μὴ ἐν τῷ τέλει. εἰ
 οὖν, ὥσπερ λέγεται, ἐκούσιοί εἰσιν αἱ ἀρεταί (καὶ γὰρ τῶν
 ἕξεων συναίτιοί πως αὐτοί ἐσμεν, καὶ τῷ ποιοί τινες εἶναι
 τὸ τέλος τοιόνδε τιθέμεθα), καὶ αἱ κακίαι ἐκούσιοι ἂν εἶεν· 24

ἄμφο: both (dual), 8

ἀνα-φέρω: to refer; carry back, 1

εἴ-τε: either...or; whether...or, 4

ἐκούσιως: willingly, voluntarily, 4

κεῖμαι: to be placed, set down, established, 1

οἷονδὴποτε, -α, -ον: of whatsoever sort, 1

ὅπωςδὴποτε: howsoever, 2

παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9

13 τί μᾶλλον ἢ ἀρετὴ...: *Why will virtue be more voluntary...?*; common translation of τί ('in respect to what?')

τῆς κακίας: *than...*; gen. of respect

ἀμφοῖν: *to both (men)...*; dual dat.

ὁμοίως: *in the same way*

τῷ ἀγαθῷ καὶ τῷ κακῷ: in apposition to ἀμφοῖν

14 φύσει ἢ ὅπωςδὴποτε: in apposition to ὁμοίως

15 τὰ λοιπὰ...ἀναφέροντες: (*they*)...; pres. ppl and acc. obj.; ppl modifies the 3p subject of πράττουσιν

τὰ λοιπὰ: *the rest (of the actions)*

πρὸς τοῦτο: i.e. to the τέλος

16 εἴτε...εἴτε...: *whether...or...*

δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

τι καὶ παρ' αὐτόν ἐστιν: *something in fact is depending of him*; or 'on account of him' for παρὰ + acc. marking dependence see S1692.3c

18 φυσικόν (ἐστίν)

τῷ...πράττειν... σπουδαῖον: *because of...*; 24

ποιός, -ά, -όν: of such sort, of such kind, 4

σπουδαῖος, -α, -ον: good, earnest; 9

συν-αίτιος, -ον: contributing causes of (gen), 1

τίθημι: to place, put, set, 3

τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε: this here sort, such, 3

ὑπ-άρχω: to exist, is possible, 4

φυσικός, -ή, -όν: produced by nature, natural, 6

dat. of cause, articular inf (-ing); τὸν σπουδαῖον is acc. subject

19 ἐκούσιόν: *a voluntary thing*; nom. pred.

οὐθὲν ἦττον: *no less*; 'less by nothing' adv.

acc. (acc. of extent in degree, S1609) and comparative adv.

καί: also

20 ἐκούσιόν: see above

ἂν εἴη: potential opt. εἰμί

τῷ κακῷ: *for...*; dat. of interest

21 τὸ δι(ὰ) αὐτόν: (*acting*) *by his own (agency)*; 'on account of him,' διὰ + acc. can express cause or agency; the article may refer to an articular inf. or more likely is used to refer to the phrase: the phrase 'by his own agency'

καὶ εἰ: *even if...*

22 καὶ γὰρ...καί: *for both...and...*

23 αὐτοί: *we ourselves*; intensive

τῷ...εἶναι: *by..., because of...*; articular inf. (-ing) and dat. of cause

ποιοί τινες: *a certain sort*; pred.

24 τιθέμεθα: *we make (x) (y)*; double acc.

ὁμοίως γάρ.

25

Κοινῇ μὲν οὖν περὶ τῶν ἀρετῶν εἴρηται ἡμῖν τό τε
 γένος τύπῳ, ὅτι μεσότητές εἰσιν καὶ ὅτι ἕξεις, ὑφ' ὧν τε
 γίνονται, ὅτι τούτων πρακτικαὶ <καὶ> καθ' αὐτάς, καὶ ὅτι
 ἐφ' ἡμῖν καὶ ἐκούσιοι, καὶ οὕτως ὡς ἂν ὁ ὀρθὸς λόγος
 προστάξῃ. οὐχ ὁμοίως δὲ αἱ πράξεις ἐκούσιοί εἰσι καὶ αἱ 30
 ἕξεις· τῶν μὲν γὰρ πράξεων ἀπ' ἀρχῆς μέχρι τοῦ τέλους
 κύριοί ἐσμεν, εἰδότες τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα, τῶν ἕξεων δὲ τῆς

γένος, -εος, τό: kind, type, 2

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common(place); public, 7

μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 2

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6

26 Κοινῇ: *in common*; dat. of manner

εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω) ; pf. pass.
 governs a dat. of agent

τό τε γένος: *both their genus*

27 τύπῳ: *in...*; dat. of manner

ὅτι μεσότητές εἰσιν: *namely that...*; in
 apposition to τό γένος

ὅτ ἕξεις (εἰσίν): see above

ὑφ' ὧν...γίνονται: *by which (actions)...*;
 relative clause with ὑπὸ + gen. expressing
 agency; the following τούτων is
 antecedent

ὅτι τούτων πρακτικαὶ (εἰσίν): *namely that
 (virtues are) able to produce these
 (actions)...*; perfect πάσχω

28 κα(τὰ) (ἐ)αυτάς: *in according with...*; or
 'corresponding to...'

πρακτικός, -ή, -όν: able to effect (gen.) 2

προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5

τύπος, ό: mark, outline; sketch, 5

ὅτι (εἰσίν)

29 ἐφ' ἡμῖν: *in our power*; 'up to us'

ὡς ἂν...προστάξῃ: *as...prescribes*; a
 conditional clause of comparison with ἂν +
 subj. (3s aor. subj.); equiv. to a general
 condition

τῶν μὲν...πράξεων: of actions...; parallel
 to τῶν ἕξεων δὲ below

32 ἐσμεν: 1p εἰμί

εἰδότες: pplε οἶδα

τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα: *the particulars, the details*;
 'those each by each,' i.e. between ἀρχή and
 τέλος

τῶν ἕξεων δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς (κύριοί ἐσμεν): *and
 of the dispositions...*; ellipsis, parallel to
 above

ἀρχῆς, καθ' ἕκαστα δὲ ἡ πρόσθεσις οὐ γνώριμος, ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀρρωστιῶν· ἀλλ' ὅτι ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἦν οὕτως ἢ μὴ οὕτω χρήσασθαι, διὰ τοῦτο ἐκούσιοι.

Ἀναλαβόντες δὲ περὶ ἐκάστης εἰπώμεν τίνες εἰσὶ καὶ περὶ ποῖα καὶ πῶς· ἅμα δ' ἔσται δῆλον καὶ πόσαι εἰσὶν. 5 καὶ πρῶτον περὶ ἀνδρείας. 6. ὅτι μὲν οὖν μεσότης ἐστὶ περὶ φόβους καὶ θάρρη, ἤδη φανερόν γεγένηται· φοβούμεθα δὲ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ φοβερά, ταῦτα δ' ἐστὶν ὡς ἀπλῶς εἰπεῖν κακά· διὸ καὶ τὸν φόβον ὀρίζονται προσδοκίαν κακοῦ. φοβούμεθα μὲν οὖν πάντα τὰ κακά, οἷον ἀδοξίαν πενίαν 10 νόσον ἀφιλίαν θάνατον, ἀλλ' οὐ περὶ πάντα δοκεῖ ὁ ἀνδρεῖος εἶναι· ἔνια γὰρ καὶ δεῖ φοβεῖσθαι καὶ καλόν, τὸ

ἀ-δοξία, ἡ: disgrace, 2

ἅμα: at the same time; along with (dat.), 2

ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to take up or back, 2

ἀρρωστία, ἡ: sickness, 1

ἀ-φιλία, ἡ: lack of friends, 1

γνώριμος, -ον: known, recognizable, 2

δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9

ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 4

θάρρος, -εος, τό: rashness, confidence, 3

1 καθ' ἕκαστα: *individual, one by one*; 'each by each' modifying ἡ πρόσθεσις

2 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

ὅτι: *because...*

ἐφ' ἡμῖν: *in our power*; 'up to us'

ἦν: *it really is...*; i.e. it was and still is...; 3s

impf. εἰμί of a truth just realized (S1902), which is often present in English

οὕτως ἢ μὴ οὕτω χρήσασθαι: *to...*;

explanatory (epexegetical) inf. qualifying

ἐφ' ἡφῖν; supply 'dispositions' as object

3 ἐκούσιοι (εἰσὶν): *they are...*; i.e. αἱ ἔξεις

4 περὶ ἐκάστης (ἀρετῆς)

εἰπώμεν: *let...*; 1p hortatory subj. λέγω

(ἐρέω); governing a series of ind. questions

5 ἔσται: *it will be*; impersonal fut.

καὶ: *also*

νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5

ὀρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 6

πενία, ἡ: poverty, need, 3

πόσος, -α, -ον: how much, many or great, 4

προσ-δοκία, ἡ: expectation, 1

πρόσ-θεσις, ἡ: addition, 1

φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 5

φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8

χράσμαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7

6 πρῶτον: adverbial acc.

ὅτι...: *that...*; subject

7 θάρρη: *instances of rashness*; θάρρε-α γεγένηται: *has proven to be*; 'has come to be' pf. mid.

8 δῆλον ὅτι: translate this frequent construction either (1) '(it is) clear that' and place main verb in clause or (2) 'clearly' ὡς...εἰπεῖν: *so to speak...*; inf. absolute (S2012)

9 προσδοκίαν: *as...*; acc. pred.

10 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'

11 περὶ πάντα...εἶναι: *to be concerning all (these) things*

12 καὶ δεῖ...καὶ καλόν (ἐστὶν): *both...and (it is)...*; both impersonal constructions govern the inf.; ἔνια is acc. obj.

δὲ μὴ αἰσχρόν, οἷον ἀδοξίαν· ὁ μὲν γὰρ φοβούμενος ἐπιει-
κῆς καὶ αἰδήμων, ὁ δὲ μὴ φοβούμενος ἀναίσχυντος. λέ-
γεται δ' ὑπὸ τινων ἀνδρείος κατὰ μεταφοράν· ἔχει γάρ 15
τι ὅμοιον τῷ ἀνδρείῳ· ἄφοβος γάρ τις καὶ ὁ ἀνδρείος.
πενίαν δ' ἴσως οὐ δεῖ φοβεῖσθαι οὐδὲ νόσον, οὐδ' ὅλως ὅσα
μὴ ἀπὸ κακίας μηδὲ δι' αὐτόν. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ὁ περὶ ταῦτα
ἄφοβος ἀνδρείος. λέγομεν δὲ καὶ τοῦτον καθ' ὁμοιότητα·
ἔνιοι γὰρ ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς κινδύνοις δειλοὶ ὄντες ἐλευ- 20
θέριοι εἰσι καὶ πρὸς χρημάτων ἀποβολὴν εὐθαρσῶς ἔχου-
σιν. οὐδὲ δὴ εἴ τις ὕβριν περὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκα φοβεῖ-
ται ἢ φθόνον ἢ τι τῶν τοιούτων, δειλὸς ἐστίν· οὐδ' εἰ θαρρεῖ
μέλλων μαστιγοῦσθαι, ἀνδρείος. περὶ ποῖα οὖν τῶν φοβερῶν 24

ἀ-δοξία, ἡ: disgrace, 2

ἄ-φοβος, -ον: fearless, without fear, 3

αἰδήμων (-ονος), -ον: modest, 3

ἀν-αίσχυντος, -ον: shameless, 2

ἀπο-βολή, ἡ: loss, throwing away, 1

γυνή, γυναικός ἡ: woman, wife, 1

ἐλευθέριος, -α, -ον: generous, liberal, 4

ἐπι-εικής, -ές: fair, equitable, good, suitable, 2

εὐ-θαρσῶς: quite boldly, quite confidently, 1

μαστιγῶ: to whip, flog, 1

μέλλω: be likely, intend, be about to (inf.), 2

13 τὸ δὲ μὴ (φοβεῖσθαι) αἰσχρον (ἐστίν):
and...

οἷον: for example; 'in respect to which sort'

ὁ φοβούμενος: one...; add τὴν ἀδοξίαν
as object

14 ὁ μὴ φοβούμενος: add τὴν ἀδοξίαν
λέγεται: (a man fearing disgrace)...;
supply a subject

15 ὑπὸ...: by...; gen. expressing agency
κατὰ μεταφώραν: by analogy; 'in
accordance with transference'
ἔχει: (a man fearing disgrace)...

16 τῷ ἀνδρείῳ: dat. of special adj.
καί: in fact, actually

ὁ ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν): subject

17 οὐδὲ: nor; both instances of οὐδέ are
separation conjunctions

ὅσα...(ἐστίν): i.e. as many as are not caused
by...

μετα-φορά, ἡ: metaphor, transference, 1

μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 3

νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5

ὅμοιος, -α, -ον: like, similar, resembling, 7

ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 4

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5

πενία, ἡ: poverty, need, 3

πολεμικός, -ή, -όν: of war, warlike, 2

ὕβρις, ἡ: assault, violence, 1

φθόνος, ὁ: envy, 4

χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: money; property, 5

18 δι' αὐτόν: on account of himself
οὐδ(ἐ): not even

19 ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν): pred.

λέγομεν δὲ καὶ τοῦτον καθ' ὁμοιότητα:
but we call (him) this too by way of
similarity; i.e. call ἄφοβον ἀνδρείον;
'in respect to similarity'

20 δειλοὶ ὄντες: (although)...; concessive use
of pres. pple εἰμί

21 πρὸς...: in regard to...

εὐθαρσῶς ἔχουσιν: ἔχω ('be disposed' or
'holds') + adv. is often translated as εἰμί +
pred.

22 οὐδὲ δὴ: nor indeed; δὴ is intensive
γυναῖκα: (his) wife

23 οὐδ(ἐ): nor...

24 μέλλων: (someone) about to...; subject
ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν)

ὁ ἀνδρείος; ἢ περὶ τὰ μέγιστα; οὐθὲς γὰρ ὑπομενετικώτερος 25
 τῶν δεινῶν. φοβερώτατον δ' ὁ θάνατος· πέρας γάρ, καὶ
 οὐδὲν ἔτι τῷ τεθνεῶτι δοκεῖ οὐτ' ἀγαθὸν οὔτε κακὸν εἶναι.
 δόξειε δ' ἂν οὐδὲ περὶ θάνατον τὸν ἐν παντὶ ὁ ἀνδρείος
 εἶναι, οἷον ἐν θαλάττῃ ἢ νόσοις. ἐν τίσιν οὖν; ἢ ἐν
 τοῖς καλλίστοις; τοιοῦτοι δὲ οἱ ἐν πολέμῳ· ἐν μεγίστῳ γὰρ 30
 καὶ καλλίστῳ κινδύνῳ. ὁμολογοὶ δὲ τούτοις εἰσὶ καὶ αἱ τι-
 μαὶ αἱ ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι καὶ παρὰ τοῖς μονάρχοις. κυρίως
 δὴ λέγοιτ' ἂν ἀνδρείος ὁ περὶ τὸν καλὸν θάνατον ἀδεής,
 καὶ ὅσα θάνατον ἐπιφέρει ὑπόγνια ὄντα· τοιαῦτα δὲ μά-
 λιστα τὰ κατὰ πόλεμον. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν θαλάττῃ 35

ἀ-δεής, -ές: fearless, 2

δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5

ἐπι-φέρω: to bring, bring on, impose, 1

θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 2

θνήσκω: to die, 11

κάλλιστος, -η, -ον: most noble or beautiful, 4

κυρίως: legitimately, authoritatively, 1

μέγιστος, -η, -ον: very large, greatest, most important, 4

μὴν: truly, surely, 5

μον-άρχος, ὁ: monarch, sole ruler, 1

25 ὁ ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν)

οὐθὲς (ἐστίν)

26 τῶν δεινῶν: objective gen. modifying the comparative adj.

φοβερώτατον: neut. pred.: supply 'thing'

πέρας (ἐστίν): (it is)...

27 οὐδὲν ἔτι: no longer anything...; 'not anything still'

τῷ τεθνεῶτι: to...; dat. of reference, pf.

act. pple θνήσκω; the pf. indicates a state ('being dead') rather than activity ('having died')

28 δόξειε δ' ἂν: would...; aor. potential opt.

οὐδὲ: not even

τὸν ἐν παντί: in every (circumstance); modifying θάνατον in the attributive

νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5

ὁμό-λογος, -ον: agreeing, corresponding (dat.), 1

παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9

πέρας, τό: limit, end, boundary, 1

πόλεμος, ὁ: war, 4

πόλις, -εως ἡ: a city-state, city, 2

τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8

ὑπό-γνιος, -ον: sudden, imminent, at hand, 1

ὑπομενετικός, -ή, -όν: abiding, enduring, 1

position

29 οἷον: for example; 'in respect to which' ἐν τίσιν οὖν: in what instances (of death) then (is one courageous)?; dat. pl. τίς

30 τοιοῦτοι (εἰσίν)

32 αἱ ἐν...μονάρχοις: prepositional phrases in attributive position modifying τιμαί

παρὰ: alongside...

δὴ: quite; intensive modifying to the adverb

33 λέγοιτ(δ) ἂν: would...; potential pres. opt.

ὅσα...: as many (emergencies) as...; neut.

pl. subject

34 ὑπόγνια ὄντα: pple εἰμί modifying ὅσα

35 κατὰ: in...; 'in respect to'

οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ: nevertheless; (S2767)

καὶ ἐν νόσοις ἀδεῆς ὁ ἀνδρεῖος, οὐχ οὕτω δὲ ὡς οἱ θαλάτ-
τιοι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἀπεγνώκασιν τὴν σωτηρίαν καὶ τὸν θάνα-
τον τὸν τοιοῦτον δυσχεραίνουσιν, οἱ δὲ εὐέλπιδες εἰσι παρὰ
τὴν ἐμπειρίαν. ἅμα δὲ καὶ ἀνδρίζονται ἐν οἷς ἐστὶν ἀλκή
ἢ καλὸν τὸ ἀποθανεῖν· ἐν ταῖς τοιαύταις δὲ φθοραῖς οὐδέ- 5
τερον ὑπάρχει.

7. Τὸ δὲ φοβερόν οὐ πᾶσι μὲν τὸ αὐτό, λέγομεν δέ τι
καὶ ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν παντὶ φοβερόν τῷ γε
νοῦν ἔχοντι· τὰ δὲ κατ' ἄνθρωπον διαφέρει μεγέθει καὶ τῷ
μᾶλλον καὶ ἥττον· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὰ θαρραλέα. ὁ δὲ 10
ἀνδρεῖος ἀνέκπληκτος ὡς ἄνθρωπος. φοβήσεται μὲν οὖν καὶ
τὰ τοιαῦτα, ὡς δεῖ δὲ καὶ ὡς ὁ λόγος ὑπομένει τοῦ καλοῦ

ἀ-δεῆς, -ές: fearless, 2

ἀλκή, ἡ: strength, prowess (to avert danger) 1

ἅμα: at the same time; along with (dat.), 2

ἀν-ἐκπληκτος, -ον: intrepid, undaunted, 1

ἀνδρίζομαι: to play the man; become a man, 1

ἀπο-γινώσκω: despair, give up hope of, 1

ἀπο-θνήσκω: to die, die off, perish, 4

δυσ-χεραίνω: to feel annoyance, be vexed, 3

ἐμπειρία, ἡ: experience, 4

εὖ-ελπς, -ιδος, ὁ, ἡ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5

θαλάττιος, ὁ: seaman (sailor), 1

θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 1

νόσος, ὁ: illness, sickness, 5

νοῦς, ὁ: sense; mind, attention, 4

οὐδέτερος, -α, -ον: not either, neither, 1

παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9

σωτηρία, ἡ: preservation, saving a life, 5

ὑπ-άρχω: to exist, is possible, 4

ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); beyond, 5

φθορά, ἡ: disaster, destruction, 2

1 ἀδεῆς (ἐστίν): pred.

ὡς: as...; clause of comparison; as often,
the verb is missing through ellipsis

οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ: these...those...; i.e. the
courageous vs. the seamen; the accented
article οἱ indicates that the article is used as
a demonstrative (S1107)

2 ἀπεγνώκασιν: 3p pf.; the pf. denotes a state
rather than activity: 'are in despair over'

3 παρὰ: in consequence of...; 'because of...'

4 ἀνδρίζονται: they play the man; i.e. people
are courageous

ἐν οἷς: in which circumstances...; relative

5 καλὸν (ἐστίν): pred.

τὸ ἀποθανεῖν: aor. articular inf. (-ing)

7 πᾶσι: to...; dat. pl. of reference (viewpoint)

τὸ αὐτό (ἐστίν): pred., αὐτός in the
attributive position means 'same'

τι...ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον: something beyond
human (endurance); 'exceeding the human'

καὶ: in fact, actually; adv.

8 τοῦτο (ἐστίν)

τῷ...ἔχοντι: pple modifies παντὶ; νοῦν
ἔχειν is a common idiom for 'have sense'
γε: at least; restrictive

9 τὰ κατ(ὰ) ἄνθρωπον: things not beyond
human endurance; 'in accordance to a
human' in contrast to τι ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον

μεγέθει: in...; dat. of respect

τῷ μᾶλλον καὶ ἥττον: in respect to the
more and less; i.e. in degree; dat. of respect

10 τὰ θαρραλέα: acts inspiring confidence

11 ἀνέκπληκτος (ἐστίν) ὡς ἄνθρωπος: is as
...as a man (can be); ὡς introduces a clause
of comparison with verb missing via ellipsis
καὶ: even

12 ὡς...: as he ought and as reason
(requires); two clauses of comparison
ὑπομένει: he will endure; ὑπομένει-ει, fut.
τοῦ καλοῦ: of what is noble; 'the noble'

ἔνεκα· τοῦτο γὰρ τέλος τῆς ἀρετῆς. ἔστι δὲ μᾶλλον καὶ
 ἥττον ταῦτα φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ ἔτι τὰ μὴ φοβερὰ ὥς τοιαῦτα
 φοβεῖσθαι. γίνεται δὲ τῶν ἀμαρτιῶν ἡ μὲν ὅτι <δ> οὐ δεῖ, ἡ 15
 δὲ ὅτι οὐχ ὥς δεῖ, ἡ δὲ ὅτι οὐχ ὅτε, ἡ τι τῶν τοιούτων· ὁμοίως
 δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰ θαρραλέα. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἂν δεῖ καὶ οὐ ἔνεκα
 ὑπομένων καὶ φοβούμενος, καὶ ὥς δεῖ καὶ ὅτε, ὁμοίως δὲ
 καὶ θαρρῶν, ἀνδρείος· κατ' ἀξίαν γάρ, καὶ ὥς ἂν ὁ λόγος,
 πάσχει καὶ πράττει ὁ ἀνδρείος. τέλος δὲ πάσης ἐνεργείας 20
 ἔστι τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἔξιν. †καὶ τῷ ἀνδρείῳ δὲ ἡ ἀνδρεία καλόν.†
 τοιοῦτον δὴ καὶ τὸ τέλος· ὀρίζεται γὰρ ἕκαστον τῷ τέλει.
 καλοῦ δὴ ἔνεκα ὁ ἀνδρείος ὑπομένει καὶ πράττει τὰ κατὰ
 τὴν ἀνδρείαν. τῶν δ' ὑπερβαλλόντων ὁ μὲν τῇ ἀφοβίᾳ 24

ἀμαρτία, ἡ: mistake, failure, fault; guilt, 3

ἀξία, ἡ: merit, worth, value, 2

ἀ-φοβία, ἡ: fearlessness, 2

ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8

θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6

ὀρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 6

13 τοῦτο (ἐστίν)

ἔστι: *it is possible*

μᾶλλον καὶ ἥττον: *too much and too little*; 'more and less' the comparative degree can express excess (S1082b)

14 ὥς τοιαῦτα: *as if such*; i.e. as if fearful; clause of comparison

15 φοβεῖσθαι: still governed by ἔστι

γίνεται... τοιούτων: *Among the errors there comes to be this one, namely that he ought not, and this one, namely that (it is) not in what way he ought and this one, namely that (it is) not when (he ought) or any of such things*; A very challenging sentence often simplified by translators.

Apply the initial verb and partitive gen. to each of the four subjects.

ἡ μὲν... ἡ δὲ... ἡ δὲ: *this... this... this*; fem. sg. referring to ἀμαρτία; the accented article ἡ indicates that the article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)

17 θαρραλέα: instances of confidence

ὁ μὲν... ὑπομένων καὶ φοβούμενος: *the one...*; pres. pples and single subject

ἃ δεῖ: *(the things) which...*; add antecedent as obj. of pples

οὗ ἔνεκα: *and (that) for the sake of which*;

add antecedent as obj. of pples

18 καὶ ὥς δεῖ καὶ ὅτε (δεῖ): *both...and...*;

within the preceding participle phrases

19 ἀνδρείος (ἐστίν): pred.

κατὰ ἀξίαν: *according to what is due*; 'according to merit'

ὥς ἂν ὁ λόγος: *as if reason...*; conditional clause of comparison (equiv. to pres. gen. protasis) with missing verb; see 1115b12

21 τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἔξιν (τέλος): *that (end)*

corresponding to the disposition

†καὶ...καλόν.†: A obelus (†) indicates that the words are plainly corrupt but the editor cannot see how to emend it. Omit in translation.

22 τοιοῦτον δὴ καὶ (ἐστίν): *such indeed also (is)...*; δὴ is an intensive

ἕκαστον: *each (habit)*; subject

τῷ τέλει: *by...*; dat. of mean

23 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

τὰ κατὰ...: *(actions) corresponding to...*; or 'in accordance with...'

24 τῶν δ' ὑπερβαλλόντων: *among those...*; i.e. people; pres. pple and partitive gen.

ὁ μὲν: *the one (exceeding)...*

τῇ ἀφοβίᾳ: *in...*; dat. of respect

ἀνώνυμος (εἴρηται δ' ἡμῖν ἐν τοῖς πρότερον ὅτι πολλά ἐστὶν 25
 ἀνώνυμα), εἴη δ' ἂν τις μαινόμενος ἢ ἀνάλγητος, εἰ μη-
 δὲν φοβοῖτο, μήτε σεισμὸν μήτε κύματα, καθάπερ φασὶ
 τοὺς Κελτούς· ὁ δὲ τῷ θαρρεῖν ὑπερβάλλων περὶ τὰ
 φοβερὰ θρασύς. δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ ἀλαζῶν εἶναι ὁ θρασὺς καὶ
 προσποιητικὸς ἀνδρείας· ὡς γοῦν ἐκεῖνος περὶ τὰ φοβερὰ 30
 ἔχει, οὗτος βούλεται φαίνεσθαι· ἐν οἷς οὖν δύναται,
 μιμνῆται. διὸ καὶ εἰσὶν οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν θρασυδαίμονες· ἐν
 τούτοις γὰρ θρασυνόμενοι τὰ φοβερὰ οὐχ ὑπομένουσιν. ὁ
 δὲ τῷ φοβεῖσθαι ὑπερβάλλων δειλός· καὶ γὰρ ἂ μὴ δεῖ
 καὶ ὡς οὐ δεῖ καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀκολουθεῖ αὐτῷ. 35

ἀκολουθεῖω: to follow (dat.) 2

ἀλαζῶν, -όνος, ὁ, ἡ: boastful, 2

ἀν-άλγητος, -ον: insensitive to pain, 1

ἀν-ώνυμος, -ον: nameless, without a name, 8

γοῦν (γε οὖν): at any rate, any way, 1

δύναται: to be able, can, be capable, 9

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8

θρασύ-δειλος, ὁ: brash coward, rash coward, 1

θρασύνω: make rash; *pass.* be rash/bold, 1

καθ-άπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6

25 ἀνώνυμος (ἐστίν)

εἴρηται: 3s pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)

ἡμῖν: dat. of agent

ἐν τοῖς πρότερον: i.e. earlier in the text
 beginning at 1107b1; an adverbial acc. in
 the attributive position

ὅτι: *that...*

26 εἴη ἂν...εἰ...φοβοῖτο: *would..., if...should;*
 fut. less vivid (εἰ opt, ἂν + opt.), εἴμι

27 φασί: *they say (about);* 3p φημί

τῷ θαρρεῖν: *in...;* articular inf. and dat. of
 respect

θρασύς (ἐστίν)

30 ὡς: *as..., just as...;* clause of comparison

Κελτοί, οἱ: the Celts, Gauls, 1

κύμα, -ατος, τό: wave; flood, 2

μαίνομαι: to mad, rage, be furious, 3

μή-τε: and not; neither...nor, 8

μιμέομαι: to imitate, mimic, represent, 2

προσποιητικός, -ή, -όν: making pretense to
 (gen), 1

πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8

σεισμός, ὁ: earthquake; shaking, 1

ἐκεῖνος refers to ὁ ἀνδρείος and οὗτος to ὁ
 θρασύς

31 ἐν οἷς: *in what circumstances*

ἐν τούτοις: *in these circumstances*

33 ὁ...ὑπερβάλλων: *the one...*

34 τῷ φοβεῖσθαι: *in...;* articular inf. and dat.
 of respect

δειλός (ἐστίν)

34 καὶ γάρ: *for in fact*

ἃ μὴ δεῖ: *(the things) which...;* relative with
 generalizing μή; the missing antecedent is
 subject

35 ὡς οὐ δεῖ: *how...;* or 'in what way...'
 ind. quest.

ἐλλείπει δὲ καὶ τῷ θαρρεῖν· ἀλλ' ἐν ταῖς λύπαις ὑπερ-
 βάλλον μᾶλλον καταφανής ἐστιν. δύσελπις δὴ τις ὁ δει-
 λός· πάντα γὰρ φοβείται. ὁ δ' ἀνδρείος ἐναντίως· τὸ γὰρ
 θαρρεῖν εὐέλπιδος. περὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ὃ τε δειλὸς
 καὶ ὁ θρασὺς καὶ ὁ ἀνδρείος, διαφόρως δ' ἔχουσι πρὸς 5
 αὐτά· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ὑπερβάλλουσι καὶ ἐλλείπουσιν, ὁ δὲ μέ-
 σως ἔχει καὶ ὡς δεῖ· καὶ οἱ μὲν θρασεῖς προπετεῖς, καὶ
 βουλόμενοι πρὸ τῶν κινδύνων ἐν αὐτοῖς δ' ἀφίστανται, οἱ
 δ' ἀνδρεῖοι ἐν τοῖς ἔργοις ὀξεῖς, πρότερον δ' ἡσύχιοι.

Καθάπερ οὖν εἴρηται, ἡ ἀνδρεία μεσότης ἐστὶ περὶ 10
 θαρραλέα καὶ φοβερά, ἐν οἷς εἴρηται, καὶ ὅτι καλὸν αἰρείται
 καὶ ὑπομένει, ἥ ὅτι αἰσχροὺς τὸ μῆ. τὸ δ' ἀποθνήσκειν

ἀπο-θνήσκω: to die, die off, perish, 4
 ἀφ-ίστημι: set apart, remove; *mid.* withdraw 4
 δια-φόρως: differently, with a difference, 1
 δύσ-ελπις, -ιδος: without help, despondent, 1
 ἐναντίως: in an opposite or contrary way, 2
 εὖ-ελπις, -ιδος, ὁ, ἡ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5
 ἡσύχιος, -ον: still, quiet, at rest, 1
 θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6

- 1 τῷ θαρρεῖν: *in...*; articular inf. and dat. of respect
 2 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential
 ὁ δειλός (ἐστίν)
 4 εὐέλπιδος (ἐστίν): (*a sign*) of...; or 'of...' gen. of quality as predicate
 ὃ: article ὁ following the enclitic τε
 5 διαφόρως δ' ἔχουσι: ἔχω ('be disposed' or 'holds') + adv. is often translated as εἰμί + pred.
 6 οἱ μὲν... ὁ δὲ: *these...that...*; the accented articles indicate that they are being used as demonstratives (S1107)
 μέσως ἔχει: see line 5
 7 ὡς δεῖ: *as he ought*; parallel to μέσως and governed by ἔχω; equiv. to ἔχει (οὕτως) ὡς δεῖ, 'is disposed in this way as he ought

καθ-άπερ: just as, accordingly as, 6
 κατα-φανής, -ές: clearly seen, evident, 1
 μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 3
 ὀξύς, -εῖα, -υ: sharp, quick, keen, 1
 πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4
 προ-πετής, -ές: falling headlong; reckless, 1
 πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8

- προπετεῖς (εἰσίν)
 8 πρὸ...: *before...*; i.e. in time; preposition modifies the pple
 ἐν αὐτοῖς: ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις
 ἀφίστανται: 3p pres. mid.; as here, the mid. is often reflexive in meaning
 9 ὀξεῖς (εἰσίν)
 πρότερον: comparative adv.
 10 εἴρηται: *it...*; impersonal pf. pass. λέγω (ἔρέω)
 11 ἐν οἷς: *in what circumstances*
 ὅτι καλόν (ἐστίν): *because it is noble*
 12 ὅτι αἰσχροὺς (ἐστίν) τὸ μῆ: see above
 τὸ μῆ: *not to (do) so*; articular inf. and logical subject
 τὸ δ' ἀποθνήσκειν: articular inf. (-ing)

φεύγοντα πενίαν ἢ ἔρωτα ἢ τι λυπηρὸν οὐκ ἀνδρείου, ἀλλὰ
 μᾶλλον δειλοῦ· μαλακία γὰρ τὸ φεύγειν τὰ ἐπίπονα, καὶ
 οὐχ ὅτι καλὸν ὑπομένει, ἀλλὰ φεύγων κακόν. 8. ἔστι μὲν 15
 οὖν ἢ ἀνδρεία τοιοῦτόν τι, λέγονται δὲ καὶ ἕτεροι κατὰ
 πέντε τρόπους· πρῶτον μὲν ἢ πολιτικῇ· μάλιστα γὰρ ἔοικεν.
 δοκοῦσι γὰρ ὑπομένειν τοὺς κινδύνους οἱ πολῖται διὰ τὰ ἐκ
 τῶν νόμων ἐπιτίμια καὶ τὰ ὀνειδῆ καὶ διὰ τὰς τιμὰς·
 καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀνδρεϊότατοι δοκοῦσιν εἶναι παρ' οἷς οἱ δειλοὶ 20
 ἄτιμοι καὶ οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι ἔντιμοι. τοιούτους δὲ καὶ Ὅμηρος
 ποιεῖ, οἷον τὸν Διομήδην καὶ τὸν Ἑκτορα·

Πουλυδάμας μοι πρῶτος ἐλεγχείην ἀναθήσει· (II. 22.100)

καὶ [Διομήδης]

24

ἀνα-τίθημι: to place, set up, attribute, 1

ἄ-τιμος, -ον: dishonored, unhonored, 1

Διομήδης, ὁ: Diomedes, 2

ἐγὼ (ἐγὼν, ἐμεῖο=ἐμοῦ): I, 3

Ἑκτωρ, ὁ: Hector, 3

ἐλεγχείη, ἡ: reproach, 1

ἐν-τιμος, -ον: honored, honorable, 1

ἐπί-πονός, -ον: painful, laborious, 1

ἐπι-τίμιον, τό: penalty, 2

ἔρως, -ωτος, ὁ: desire, love, 1

μαλακία, ἡ: softness, weakness, 1

νόμος, ὁ: law, custom, 2

Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 4

ὀνειδος, -εος, τό: reproach, rebuke, 2

παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9

πενία, ἡ: poverty, need, 3

πέντε: five, 1

πολίτης, ὁ: citizen, 2

πολιτικός, -ή, -όν: of a citizen, political, 2

Πουλυδάμας, ὁ: Poulydamas, 1

τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8

τρόπος, ὁ: manner, way; turn, 5

13 φεύγοντα: pplle modifies the missin acc.
 subject of the inf.

ἀνδρείου (ἔστιν): (is a sign) of...; or '(is)
 of...' gen. of quality as pred.

δειλοῦ: (is a sign) of...; gen. of quality as
 pred.

μαλακία (ἔστιν)

15 ὅτι καλὸν (ἔστιν): because it...

16 τοιοῦτόν τι: something of this sort

λέγονται δὲ καὶ ἕτεροι (ἀνδρεία): other
 (virtues) are also called "courage;" i.e. the
 word 'courage' is used in five different
 ways

κατὰ πέντε πρόπους: in five ways

17 πρῶτον: adverbial acc.

ἢ πολιτικῇ (ἀνδρεία): (courage) of a
 citizen; or 'political (courage)'

20 ἀνδρεϊότατοι: superlative; nom. subject

παρ(ὰ) οἷς: (those) for whom...; the missing

antecedent is nom. pred.; παρὰ + dat. here
 mean 'in the opinion of whom' (S1692.2b),
 similar to a dative of reference

21 ἔντιμοι (εἰσίν)

22 ποιεῖ: portrays

οἷον: for example; 'in respect to which'

23 Πουλυδάμας...: This is an important line.

Hector had made a strategic error that had
 been opposed earlier by Polydamas and
 other Trojans. At this point Hector realizes
 his error but rather than enter the city and
 face the Trojans, his sense of honor and
 shame compels him to stay outside the city
 walls and fight Achilles

23 μοι: upon me; dat. of compound verb

ἀναθήσει: fut.;

24 καὶ [Διομήδης]: and Diomedes (says)

Ἔκτωρ γάρ ποτε φήσει ἐνὶ Τρώεσσ' ἀγορεύων
'Τυδείδης ὑπ' ἐμέιο.'

25

(II. 8.148)

ὡμοίωται δ' αὕτη μάλιστα τῇ πρότερον εἰρημένῃ, ὅτι δι'
ἀρετὴν γίνεται· δι' αἰδῶ γὰρ καὶ διὰ καλοῦ ὄρεξιν (τιμῆς
γάρ) καὶ φυγὴν ὀνειδους, αἰσχροῦ ὄντος. τάξαι δ' ἂν τις
καὶ τοὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχόντων ἀναγκαζομένους εἰς ταυτό· 30
χείρους δ', ὅσω οὐ δι' αἰδῶ ἀλλὰ διὰ φόβον αὐτὸ δρῶσι,
καὶ φεύγοντες οὐ τὸ αἰσχρὸν ἀλλὰ τὸ λυπηρόν· ἀναγκά-
ζουσι γὰρ οἱ κύριοι, ὥσπερ ὁ Ἔκτωρ

ὃν δέ κ' ἐγὼν ἀπάνευθε μάχης πτώσσοντα νοήσω,
οὗ οἱ ἄρκιον ἐσσεῖται φυγέειν κύνας.

(II. 2.391) 35

καὶ οἱ προστάττοντες, κἂν ἀναχωρῶσι τύπτοντες, τὸ αὐτὸ

ἀγορεύω: to proclaim, speak publicly, 1
αἰδῶς, -όος, ἡ: sense of shame, 3
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 8
ἀνα-χωρέω: to go back, withdraw, retreat, 1
ἀπάνευθε: afar off, far away, 1
ἄρκιος, -α, -ον: sufficient, enough, reliable, 1
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 3
δράω: to do, 4
ἐγὼ (ἐγών, ἐμεῖο=ἐμοῦ): I, 3
Ἔκτωρ, ὁ: Hector, 3
κύων, κυνός, ὁ: dog, 2
μάχη, ἡ: battle, fight, combat, 1
νοέω: to see; mean; intend, consider, think, 1
ὁμοίω: to make like; *pass.* to be like (dat), 1

25 Ἔκτωρ: Hector leads the Trojans in an
attack on the Greeks and almost burns all
of their ships. Nestor has just asked Greek
Diomedes to retreat, but Diomedes lingers
and notes what Hector will say about him.

φήσει: fut. φημί

ἐνί: ἐν

Τυδείδης ὑπ' ἐμέιο: *By me the son of
Tydeus...*; an incomplete sentence

27 ὡμοίωται: pf. pass. πάσχω
αὕτη (ἡ ἀνδρεία): this (type of courage)
τῇ...εἰρημένῃ: *the one...*; pf. pass. pp
λέγω (ἐρέω); i.e. the ἀνδρεία
ὅτι: *because...*

28 δι' αἰδῶ: δι(ᾶ) αἰδόα; acc. sg. (S266)
(τιμῆς γάρ): (*i.e. of honor*); explanatory
γάρ (S2808): 'for example' or 'that is'

ὀνειδος, -εος, τό: reproach, rebuke, 2
ὄρεξις, ἡ: desire, longing, striving, 5
ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 2
προσ-τάττω: to order, prescribe, enjoin, 5
πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8
πτώσσω: to shrink shrink from, 1
τάττω: to assign, put (in order); order, 2
τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8
Τρῶες, Τρώων, οἱ: Trojans (dat. Τρώεσσι) 1
Τυδείδης, ὁ: son of Tydeus (Diomedes), 1
τύπτω: to strike, beat, 3
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8
φυγή, ἡ: avoidance; flight, escape, 2
χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 4

29 ὀνειδους: ὀνειδε-ος, gen. sg.

αἰσχροῦ ὄντος: causal gen. abl., εἰμί

τάξαι ἂν: *might...*; 3s aor. potential opt.

30 τοὺς...ἀναγκαζομένους: *those...*

ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχόντων: *by their rulers*

εἰς τ(ὸ) αὐτό: *into the same (group as the
courageous)*

31 χείρο(ν)ες δ' (εἰσίν): *but (they are)...*; pred.

ὅσω: *inasmuch as...*; 'by as much as'

33 οἱ κύριοι: *their masters*

34 ὃν δέ...: *Whoever I see cowering from
battle, for him there will be no hope to
escape the dogs*

36 οἱ προστάττοντες κ(αὶ) (ἐ)ὰν ἀναχωρῶσι
τύπτοντες: *and those commanding and
striking (the troops) if (the troops) withdraw
τὸ αὐτό: i.e. same as the κύριοι above*

δρῶσι, καὶ οἱ πρὸ τῶν τάφρων καὶ τῶν τοιούτων παρατάτ-
 τοντες· πάντες γὰρ ἀναγκάζουσιν. δεῖ δ' οὐ δι' ἀνάγκην ἀν-
 δρεῖν εἶναι, ἀλλ' ὅτι καλόν. δοκεῖ δὲ καὶ ἡ ἐμπειρία ἡ
 περὶ ἕκαστα ἀνδρεία εἶναι· ὅθεν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ᾤθη
 ἐπιστήμην εἶναι τὴν ἀνδρείαν. τοιοῦτοι δὲ ἄλλοι μὲν ἐν ἄλ- 5
 λοις, ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς δ' οἱ στρατιῶται· δοκεῖ γὰρ εἶναι
 πολλὰ κενὰ τοῦ πολέμου, ἃ μάλιστα συνεωράκασιν οὗτοι·
 φαίνονται δὴ ἀνδρεῖοι, ὅτι οὐκ ἴσασιν οἱ ἄλλοι οἷά ἐστιν.
 εἴτα ποιῆσαι καὶ μὴ παθεῖν μάλιστα δύνανται ἐκ τῆς ἐμ-
 πειρίας, δυνάμενοι χρῆσθαι τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ τοιαῦτα ἔχον- 10
 τες ὅποια ἂν εἴη καὶ πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι καὶ πρὸς τὸ μὴ
 παθεῖν κράτιστα· ὥσπερ οὖν ἀνόπλοις ὠπλισμένοι μάχον-

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 8
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity, force, compulsion, 3
 ἀν-όπλος, -ον: unarmed, without shield, 1
 δρᾶω: to do, 4
 δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 9
 εἴτα: then, next, and so, therefore, 2
 ἐμπειρία, ἡ: experience, 4
 ἐπιστήμη, ἡ: knowledge, understanding, 4
 κενός, -ή, -όν: empty, destitute, bereft, 1
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 3
 μάχομαι: to fight, 3
 ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7
 οἶομαι (οἶμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5

- 1 καὶ οἱ...παρατάττοντες: *and those...*; a third example; i.e. leaders over troops
 πρὸ...: *in front of...*
- 2 ἀναγκάζουσιν: supply 'troops' as obj.
- 3 ὅτι καλόν (ἐστίν): *because...*
 ἡ περὶ ἕκαστα: *concerning particular (cases);* in attributive position
- 4 ᾤθη: 3s aor. pass. dep. οἶομαι: translate in simple past
- 5 ἐπιστήμην...ἀνδρείαν: *that...*; ind. disc.
 τοιοῦτοι δὲ ἄλλοι ἐν ἄλλοις ἐν τοῖς
 πολεμικοῖς δ' οἱ στρατιῶται: *(as) different sorts of men (are courageous) in different circumstances, (so) soldiers (are courageous) in wars*
- 7 πολλὰ: *many (actions);* neut. pl.
 τοῦ πολέμου: *from...*; gen. of separation
 συνεωράκασιν: 3p pf.

ὀπλίζω: to arm, furnish with arms, 1
 ὄπλον, τό: arms; tool, implement, 2
 ὅποιος, -α, -ον: of what sort or kind, 2
 παρα-τάττω: draw up in battle order, 1
 πολεμικός, -ή, -όν: of war, warlike, 2
 πόλεμος, ὁ: war, 4
 πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 4
 στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ: soldier, 3
 συν-οράω: to observe, see in detail, 1
 Σωκράτης, -εος, ὁ: Socrates, 1
 τάφος, ὁ: a ditch, trench, 1
 χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7

- οὔτοι: i.e. the οἱ στρατιῶται
- 8 φαίνονται: *(those doing these activities) seem...*
 ὅτι: *because...*
 ἴσασιν: 3p οἶδα; pf. in form, but present in translation
 οἷα: *what sort (of actions)...*; ind. question
- 9 ποιῆσαι καὶ μὴ παθεῖν: *to make (an attack) and not suffer;* aor. inf. πάσχω
 (οἱ στρατιῶται) δύνανται: add subject
- 10 δυνάμενοι: modifying the missing subject
- 11 ὅποια ἂν εἴη: *would...*; relative clause with potential opt. εἰμί
 πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι: *in regard to making (an attack)*
- 12 κράτιστα: neut. pl. pred. of ἂν εἴη
 ἀνόπλοις: *with...against...*; dat. association
 ὠπλισμένοι: pf. pass. pple

ται καὶ ἀθληταὶ ιδιώταις· καὶ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς τοιοῦτοις ἀγῶ-
 σιν οὐχ οἱ ἀνδρείοτατοι μαχμώτατοί εἰσιν, ἀλλ' οἱ μά-
 λιστα ἰσχύοντες καὶ τὰ σώματα ἄριστα ἔχοντες. οἱ στρα- 15
 τιῶται δὲ δειλοὶ γίνονται, ὅταν ὑπερτείνῃ ὁ κίνδυνος καὶ
 λείπωνται τοῖς πλήθεσι καὶ ταῖς παρασκευαῖς· πρῶτοι γὰρ
 φεύγουσι, τὰ δὲ πολιτικὰ μένοντα ἀποθνήσκει, ὅπερ καὶ πὶ
 τῷ Ἑρμαίῳ συνέβη. τοῖς μὲν γὰρ αἰσχροὺς τὸ φεύγειν
 καὶ ὁ θάνατος τῆς τοιαύτης σωτηρίας αἰρετώτερος· οἱ δὲ 20
 καὶ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐκινδύνουν ὡς κρείττους ὄντες, γνόντες δὲ
 φεύγουσι, τὸν θάνατον μᾶλλον τοῦ αἰσχροῦ φοβούμενοι· ὁ
 δ' ἀνδρείος οὐ τοιοῦτος. καὶ τὸν θυμὸν δ' ἐπὶ τὴν ἀνδρείαν
 φέρουσιν· ἀνδρεῖοι γὰρ εἶναι δοκοῦσι καὶ οἱ διὰ θυμὸν 24

ἀγῶν, ἀγῶνος, ὁ: contest, athletic contest, 2
 ἀθλητής, -οῦ, ὁ: athlete, 2
 αἰρετός, -ή, -όν: choiceworthy, chosen, 5
 ἀπο-θνήσκω: to die, die off, perish, 4
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best, most excellent, noble, 6
 γινώσκω: to come to know, learn, 3
 Ἑρμαῖος, ὁ: of Hermes, 1
 ιδιώτης, -ου ὁ: private (non-political) citizen 1
 ἰσχύω: to be strong, be powerful, prevail, 2
 κινδυνεύω: to risk, run the risk, venture, 1
 κρείττων, -ον: better, stronger, superior, 1
 λείπω: to leave; *pass.* fall short in (dat), 2
 μάχμιος, -η, -ον: fighting, fit for battle, 2

13 ιδιώταις: *with amateurs*; dat. association, opposed to professionally-trained athletes
 καὶ γὰρ: *for even, for in fact*
 14 οἱ μαχμώτατοι: *best fighters*
 οἱ στρατιῶται: i.e. professional soldiers
 16 ὅταν ὑπερτείνῃ...λείπωνται: *whenever...*; general temporal clause; ἄν + 3s pres. act. and 3p pres. pass. subj.; add 'soldiers' as obj. of the 1st verb and subject of the 2nd
 17 πρῶτοι: *they are the first to...*
 18 τὰ πολιτικὰ: *citizen units*; i.e. citizen-soldiers as opposed to professional soldiers
 δὲ: *but*
 18 ὅπερ...: *the very thing which*; or 'just as,' the antecedent is the entire clause
 κα(ὶ) ἐπὶ τῷ Ἑρμαίῳ: *in fact at (the temple of) Hermes*; At Coronea in 353 BC, the Phocians defeated the citizens at the temple.

μένω: to stay, remain, abide, 3
 ὅπερ, ἤπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 9
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἄν, whenever, 7
 παρασκευή, ἡ: preparation; equipment, 2
 πλήθος, ἡ: number, multitude; size, 2
 πολιτικός, -ή, -όν: of a citizen, political, 2
 στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ: soldier, 3
 συμβαίνει: to happen, occur, result, 8
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7
 σωτηρία, ἡ: preservation, saving a life, 5
 ὑπερ-τείνω: to strain, overstrain, 2
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6

At the beginning of this battle, Boetian mercenaries fled and abandoned the people.
 19 συνέβη: aor.
 τοῖς μὲν...οἱ δὲ...: *to these (citizens)...those (mercenaries)...*
 αἰσχροὺς (ἐστίν): pred.
 20 τῆς...σωτηρίας: *than...*; gen. comparison
 αἰρετώτερος (ἐστίν): comparative
 21 ὡς...ὄντες: *on the grounds that...*; 'since...'
 ὡς + ppl expresses alleged cause from a character's point of view
 κρείττο(ν)ες: nom. pred.
 γνόντες: aor. ppl γινώσκω
 22 τοῦ αἰσχροῦ: gen. comparison
 23 καὶ τὸν θυμὸν...φέρουσιν: *They also apply Spirit onto Courage*; θυμός is the third of the five types of ἀνδρεία mentioned in 1116a16-7

ὥσπερ τὰ θηρία ἐπὶ τοὺς τρώσαντας φερόμενα, ὅτι καὶ οἱ 25
 ἀνδρεῖοι θυμοειδείς· ἰτηκώτατον γὰρ ὁ θυμὸς πρὸς τοὺς
 κινδύνους, ὅθεν καὶ Ὅμηρος “σθένος ἔμβαλε θυμῷ” καὶ
 “μένος καὶ θυμὸν ἔγειρε” καὶ “δριμὺν δ’ ἀνὰ ῥίνας μένος” καὶ
 “ἔξεσεν αἷμα”. πάντα γὰρ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔοικε σημαί-
 νειν τὴν τοῦ θυμοῦ ἔγερσιν καὶ ὀρμήν. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἀνδρεῖοι 30
 διὰ τὸ καλὸν πράττουσιν, ὁ δὲ θυμὸς συνεργεῖ αὐτοῖς· τὰ
 θηρία δὲ διὰ λύπην· διὰ γὰρ τὸ πληγῆναι ἢ διὰ τὸ φοβεῖ-
 σθαι, ἐπεὶ ἔάν γε ἐν ὕλῃ [ἢ ἐν ἔλει] ἢ, οὐ προσέρχονται. οὐ
 δὴ ἔστιν ἀνδρεία διὰ τὸ ὑπ’ ἀλγηδόνας καὶ θυμοῦ ἐξελαυνόμενα
 πρὸς τὸν κίνδυνον ὀρμᾶν, οὐθὲν τῶν δεινῶν προορῶντα, ἐπεὶ 35
 οὕτω γε κἂν οἱ ὄνοι ἀνδρεῖοι εἶεν πεινῶντες· τυπτόμενοι γὰρ

αἷμα, -ατος τό: blood, 1
 ἀλγηδών, -όνος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2
 ἀνά: up, upon, up to, 1
 δεινός, -ή, -όν: terrible, dangerous; clever, 5
 δριμύς, -εία, -ύ: bitter, sharp, piercing, 1
 ἐγείρω: to rouse, stir up, awaken, 1
 ἔγερσις, -εως, ἡ: rousing, stirring up, 1
 ἔλος, -εος, τό: meadow (by a river), 1
 ἐμ-βάλλω: to put in, throw in, 1
 ἐξ-ελαύνω: to drive out; march out, 2
 ζέω: to boil, seethe, 1
 θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast, 2
 θυμο-ειδής, -ές: spirited, high-spirited, 1
 ἰτητικός, -ά, -όν: ready to encounter, 1
 μένος, -εος, τό: might, force, 2
 ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7

25 ἐπὶ...: upon...; aor. pple τιτρώσκω
 φερόμενα: rushing...; ‘carried along,’ i.e.
 wounded animals attacking the hunters
 ὅτι: because...
 26 ἰτηκώτατον (ἐστίν): (is something) ...;
 the neut. pred. is a substantive
 27 ἔμβαλε: he put...in (dat); aor., governs and
 acc. and dat. of compound verb
 28 δριμύ...: a bitter might (went) up his nose
 31 αὐτοῖς: with...; dat. of compound verb
 διὰ λύπην (πράττουσιν)
 τὸ πληγῆναι: being...; aor. pass. articular
 inf. (-ing) πλήττω
 33 ἐπεὶ...γε: since indeed...; emphatic γε
 ἔάν...ῃ, προσέρχομαι: if...; pres. general

Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 4
 ὄνος, ὁ, ἡ: a mule, 1
 ὀρμάω: to set in motion; set out, begin, 1
 ὀρμή, ἡ: impulse, 1
 πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 3
 πλήττω: to strike, beat, 1
 προ-οράω: to foresee, see beforehand, 1
 προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 1
 ῥίς, ῥινός, ἡ: the nose, 1
 σημαίνω: to indicate, point out 1
 σθένος, -εος, τό: strength, 1
 συν-εργέω: cooperate, work together with 1
 τιτρώσκω: to wound, inflict, damage, 1
 τύπτω: to strike, beat, 3
 ὕλη, ἡ: subject matter, matter; woods, 2
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6

(ἔάν + subj., pres. ind.); 3s pres. subj. εἰμί
 [ἢ ἐν ἔλει]: omit from translation. The editor
 suggests these lines were inserted at a later
 time.
 34 δὴ: therefore, then; inferential
 (τὰ θηρία) ἐστίν...: (wild animals) are not...
 τὸ...ὀρμᾶν: articular inf. (-ing)
 ὑπὸ...: by...; gen. of cause
 ἐξελαυνόμενα: when...; pple modifying the
 missing acc. subj. τὰ θηρία
 35 οὐθὲν: οὐδὲν
 προορῶντα: modifying τὰ θηρία
 36 ἐπεὶ...γε: since...indeed
 κ(αι) ἂν...: even...would; potential opt. εἰμί

οὐκ ἀφίστανται τῆς νομῆς· καὶ οἱ μοιχοὶ δὲ διὰ τὴν ἐπι-
 θυμίαν τολμηρὰ πολλὰ δρώσιν. [οὐ δὴ ἐστὶν ἀνδρεία τὰ δι'
 ἀλγηδόνας ἢ θυμοῦ ἐξελαυνόμενα πρὸς τὸν κίνδυνον.]
 φυσικωτάτῃ δ' ἔοικεν ἡ διὰ τὸν θυμὸν εἶναι, καὶ προσ-
 λαβούσα προαίρεσιν καὶ τὸ οὖ ἔνεκα ἀνδρεία εἶναι. καὶ οἱ 5
 ἄνθρωποι δὴ ὀργιζόμενοι μὲν ἀλγοῦσι, τιμωρούμενοι δ' ἡδον-
 ται· οἱ δὲ διὰ ταῦτα μαχόμενοι μάχιμοι μὲν, οὐκ ἀν-
 δρεῖοι δέ· οὐ γὰρ διὰ τὸ καλὸν οὐδ' ὥς ὁ λόγος, ἀλλὰ
 διὰ πάθος· παραπλήσιον δ' ἔχουσιν τι. οὐδὲ δὴ οἱ εὐέλ-
 πιδες ὄντες ἀνδρεῖοι· διὰ γὰρ τὸ πολλάκις καὶ πολλοὺς 10
 νενικηκέναι θαρροῦσιν ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις· παρόμοιοι δέ, ὅτι
 ἄμφω θαρραλέοι· ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἀνδρεῖοι διὰ τὰ πρότερον εἶρη-

ἀλγέω: to feel pain, suffer, grief, 2

ἀλγηδών, -όνος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2
 ἄμφω: both (dual), 8

ἀφ-ίστημι: set apart, remove; *mid.* withdraw 4
 δράω: to do, 4

ἐξ-ελαύνω: to drive out; march out, 2
 εὖ-ελπίς, -ιδος, ὁ, ἡ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5

ἡδομαι: feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4

θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6

μάχιμος, -ης, -ον: fit for battle, warlike, 2

μάχομαι: to fight, 3

1 ἀφίστανται: 3p pres. mid.

τῆς νομῆς: gen. of separation

2 [οὐ...κίνδυνον.]: omit; The editor suggests
 that these words were inserted at a later
 time: here, repeated from 1116b33-5

4 ἡ διὰ τὸν θυμὸν (ἀνδρεία): *the type of
 courage because of spirit; i.e. the courage
 that arises from spirit*

5 τὸ οὖ ἔνεκα: *that for the sake of which; i.e.
 the purpose; obj. of the pple
 (ἔοικεν) ἀνδρεία εἶναι: inf. and pred.
 governed by the main verb*

6 τιμωρούμενοι: *by...; causal pres. mid. pple
 μάχιμοι μὲν (εἰσὶν)*

μοιχός: adulterer, 1

νικάω: to conquer, defeat, win, 2

νομή, ἡ: grazing, pasture, food, 1

παρα-όλησις, -α, -ον: resembling, similar, 1

παρα-όμοιος, -α, -ον: nearly like, resembling, 1

πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 4

προσ-λαμβάνω: take in addition, add, 1

πρότερος, -α, -ον: previous, earlier, 8

τιμωρέω: to avenge, exact vengeance, 2

τολμηρός, -ά, -όν: daring, hardy, 1

φυσικός, -ή, -όν: produced by nature, natural, 6

8 οὐδ(ε) ὥς ὁ λόγος: *nor as reason (directs);
 clause of comparison*

9 ἔχουσιν: supply 'those with spirit' as subject
 οὐδὲ δὴ: *nor indeed*

10 ἀνδρεῖοι (εἰσὶν)

τὸ...νενικηκέναι: pf. articular inf. (-ing)

11 παρόμοιοι δέ: *(the hopeful are) similar (to
 the courageous)*

ὅτι: *because...*

12 τὰ...εἰρημένα: things...; pf. pass. pple
 λέγω (ἔρῃω)

πρότερον: adverbial acc.

μένα θαρραλέοι, οἳ δὲ διὰ τὸ οἶεσθαι κράτιστοι εἶναι καὶ
 μηθὲν ἂν παθεῖν. τοιοῦτον δὲ ποιούσι καὶ οἱ μεθύσκομενοι·
 εὐέλπιδες γὰρ γίνονται. ὅταν δὲ αὐτοῖς μὴ συμβῇ τὰ τοιαῦτα, 15
 φεύγουσιν· ἀνδρείου δ' ἦν τὰ φοβερά ἀνθρώπῳ ὄντα καὶ
 φαινόμενα ὑπομένειν, ὅτι καλὸν καὶ αἰσχρὸν τὸ μὴ. διὸ
 καὶ ἀνδρειότερου δοκεῖ εἶναι τὸ ἐν τοῖς αἰφνιδίοις φόβοις
 ἄφοβον καὶ ἀτάραχον εἶναι ἢ ἐν τοῖς προδήλοις· ἀπὸ
 ἔξεως γὰρ μᾶλλον ἦν, ὅτι ἦττον ἐκ παρασκευῆς· τὰ 20
 προφανῇ μὲν γὰρ κἂν ἐκ λογισμοῦ καὶ λόγου τις προέλοιτο,
 τὰ δ' ἐξαίφνης κατὰ τὴν ἔξιν. ἀνδρεῖοι δὲ φαίνονται καὶ
 οἱ ἀγνοοῦντες, καὶ εἰσὶν οὐ πόρρῳ τῶν εὐελπίδων, χείρους δ'
 ὅσῳ ἀξίωμα οὐδὲν ἔχουσιν, ἐκεῖνοι δέ. διὸ καὶ μένουσί τινα 24

αἰφνιδίος, -ον: unforeseen, sudden, 1
 ἀξίωμα, -ατος, τό: dignity, self-dignity, 1
 ἀ-τάραχος, -ον: unperturbed, not disturbed, 2
 ἄ-φοβος, -ον: fearless, without fear, 3
 ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
 ἐξαίφνης: suddenly, immediately, 2
 εὖ-ελπιδος, -ιδος, ὁ, ἡ: quite hopeful, cheerful, 5
 θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6
 κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 3
 λογισμός ὁ: calculation; account, reasoning, 3
 μεθύσκω: make drunk; *mid.* become drunk, 1

13 οἳ δὲ (εἰσὶν θαρραλέοι): *those*...; i.e. those with θυμός; the accented article is a demonstrative
 τὸ οἶεσθαι: articular inf. (-ing), οἶομαι
 14 μηθὲν: μηδὲν
 ἂν παθεῖν: (*that*) *they would*...; ἂν and articular aor. inf. equiv. to the potential opt. of a finite verb
 καὶ: *in fact, actually*
 15 ὅταν...συμβῇ: *whenever*...; general temporal clause with 3s aor. subj.
 αὐτοῖς: *to*...; dat. of interest
 16 ἀνδρείου δ' ἦν: *it was (the mark) of the courageous man*...; gen. of quality as pred.
 ἀνθρώπτῳ: *to*...; dat. interest and reference (viewpoint)
 17 ὅτι (ἐστίν) καλόν: *because*...
 αἰσχρὸν (ἐστίν) τὸ μὴ
 τὸ μὴ: *not to (do) so*; articular inf. and logical subject

μένω: to stay, remain, abide, 3
 οἶομαι (οἶμαι): to suppose, think, imagine, 5
 ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 7
 παρασκευή, ἡ: preparation; equipment, 2
 πόρρῳ: far, far from, 3
 πρό-δηλος, -η, -ον: evident beforehand, 1
 προ-φανής, -ές: foreseen, seen beforehand, 1
 συμ-βάλλω: to contribute; join in battle, 3
 φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8
 χείρων, -ον, (-οντος): worse, inferior, 4
 18 ἀνδρειότερου: (*a mark*) *of*...; gen. of quality following the inf. εἰμί
 τὸ...εἶναι: articular inf. and logical subject
 ἐν τοῖς προδήλοις (φόβοις)
 20 ἦν: *it was*...; i.e. to be fearless in the face of sudden fears; impf. εἰμί
 ὅτι (ἦν): *because (it was)*...
 τὰ προφανῇ: i.e. dangers or fears
 21 κ(αί) ἂν...προέλοιτο: *in fact...might*...; aor. potential opt. προ-αιρέομαι (aor. ἐλ-)
 τὰ δ' ἐξαίφνης: i.e. dangers or fears
 22 οἱ ἀγνοοῦντες: the 5th and final of the five types often called courageous
 κατὰ: *according to*...
 23 τῶν εὐελπίδων: *from*...; gen. separation
 χείρο(ν)ες (εἰσὶν): *they are*...; nom. pres., the subject is οἱ ἀγνοοῦντες from l. 22
 24 ὅσῳ: *inasmuch as*...; 'by as much as'
 ἐκεῖνοι δέ (ἀξίωμα ἔχουσιν): *but*...; i.e. the courageous

χρόνον· οἱ δ' ἡπατημένοι, ἐὰν γνῶσιν ὅτι ἕτερον ἢ ὑπο- 25
 πτεύσωσι, φεύγουσιν· ὅπερ οἱ Ἀργεῖοι ἔπαθον περιπεσόντες
 τοῖς Λάκωσιν ὡς Σικυωνίους. οἳ τε δὴ ἀνδρεῖοι εἴρηται
 ποιοῖ τινες, καὶ οἱ δοκοῦντες ἀνδρεῖοι.

9. Περὶ θάρρη δὲ καὶ φόβους ἡ ἀνδρεία οὔσα οὐχ ὁμοίως
 περὶ ἄμφω ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον περὶ τὰ φοβερά· ὁ γὰρ 30
 ἐν τούτοις ἀτάραχος καὶ περὶ ταῦθ' ὡς δεῖ ἔχων ἀνδρείος
 μᾶλλον ἢ ὁ περὶ τὰ θαρραλέα. τῷ δὴ τὰ λυπηρὰ ὑπο-
 μένουν, ὡς εἴρηται, ἀνδρεῖοι λέγονται. διὸ καὶ ἐπὶ λυπον ἡ
 ἀνδρεία, καὶ δικαίως ἐπαινεῖται· χαλεπώτερον γὰρ τὰ λυ-
 πηρὰ ὑπομένουν ἢ τῶν ἡδέων ἀπέχεσθαι. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ 35

ἄμφω: both (dual), 8

ἀπατάω: to cheat, trick, deceive, beguile, 1

Ἀργεῖος, -α, -ον: Argive, of Argos, 1

ἀ-τάραχος, -ον: unperturbed, not disturbed, 2

γινώσκω: to come to know, learn, 3

δικαίως: justly, rightly, lawfully, fairly, 3

ἐπί-λυπος, -ον: painful, causing pain, 3

θαρραλέος, -ον: confident, bold, 6

θάρρος, -εος, τό: rashness, confidence, 3

25 τινα χρόνον: *for...*; acc. of duration

ἡπατημένοι: *those...*; pf. pass. pple

ἐὰν γνῶσιν,...ὑποπτεύσωσι, φεύγουσιν:
if...; pres. general condition (εἰ + subj., pres.
 ind.) 3p aor. subj. γινώσκω, ὑποπτεύω
 ἕτερον (ἐστίν)

26 ἔπαθον: aor. πάσχω

περιπεσόντες: aor. pass.

27 τοῖς Λάκωσιν: *with...*; dat. compound verb

ὡς Σικυωνίους: *as if with...*; conditional
 clause of comparison; dat. of compound;
 The Argives attacked the wrong people.

οἳ τε δὴ...: This sentence concludes the
 review of the five types called courage
 starting in 1116a15-7.

δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

εἴρηται: 3p pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρέω)

28 ποῖοι τινες (εἰσίν): *what sort at all (they
 are)*; ind. question in apposition to the
 subject

οἱ δοκοῦντες ἀνδρεῖοι (εἶναι): i.e. the five
 discussed above

Λάκων, -ωνος, ὁ: Laconian, Spartan, 1

μὴν: truly, surely, 5

ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very
 thing which, 9

περι-πίπτω: to fall in with, attack (dat), 1

Σικυωνῖοι, ὁ: Sicyonians (Grk. people), 1

ὑπο-πτεύω: to be suspicious, suspect, 1

φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 8

χρόνος, ὁ: time, 3

29 θάρρη: θάρρε-α; neut. pl. θάρρος

οὔσα: (*although*)...; pple εἰμί is concessive
 and includes περὶ θάρρη δὲ καὶ φόβους

31 ἐν τούτοις: i.e. among fearful things

(οὕτως) ἔχων: *being disposed*; ἔχω + adv.,
 here missing

ὡς δεῖ: *as...*; clause of comparison

governed by ἔχων

ἀνδρείος μᾶλλον (ἐστίν): pred.

32 ὁ περὶ τὰ θαρραλέα (ὡς δεῖ ἔχων): *the
 one...*; ellipsis

τῷ...ὑπομένειν: *by...*; articular inf. and dat.
 of means or cause

δὴ: *then, therefore*; inferential

33 εἴρηται: *it...*; impersonal pf. pass. λέγω
 (ἐρέω)

λέγονται: *they are called*

34 χαλεπώτερον (ἐστίν): (*it is*)...; impersonal
 construction with comparative adj.

35 τῶν ἡδέων: *from...*; gen. of separation
 οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ: *nevertheless*; (S2767)

δόξειεν ἂν εἶναι τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἀνδρείαν τέλος ἡδύ, ὑπὸ τῶν
κύκλῳ δ' ἀφανίζεσθαι, οἷον κὰν τοῖς γυμνικοῖς ἀγῶσι γί-
νεται· τοῖς γὰρ πύκταις τὸ μὲν τέλος ἡδύ, οὐ ἔνεκα, ὁ
στέφανος καὶ αἱ τιμαί, τὸ δὲ τύπτεσθαι ἀλγεινόν, εἴπερ
σάρκινοι, καὶ λυπηρόν, καὶ πᾶς ὁ πόνος· διὰ δὲ τὸ πολλὰ 5
ταῦτ' εἶναι, μικρόν ὃν τὸ οὐ ἔνεκα οὐδὲν ἡδὺ φαίνεται ἔχειν.
εἰ δὴ τοιοῦτόν ἐστι καὶ τὸ περὶ τὴν ἀνδρείαν, ὁ μὲν θάνατος
καὶ τὰ τραύματα λυπηρὰ τῷ ἀνδρείῳ καὶ ἄκοντι ἔσται,
ὑπομενεῖ δὲ αὐτὰ ὅτι καλὸν ἢ ὅτι αἰσχροὺς τὸ μή. καὶ
ὅσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον τὴν ἀρετὴν ἔχη πᾶσαν καὶ εὐδαιμονέστε- 10
ρος ἦ, μᾶλλον ἐπὶ τῷ θανάτῳ λυπήσεται· τῷ τοιούτῳ
γὰρ μάλιστα ζῆν ἄξιον, καὶ οὗτος μεγίστων ἀγαθῶν ἀπο-

ἀγῶν, ἀγῶνος, ὁ: contest, athletic contest, 2
ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον: involuntary, unwilling, 8
ἀλγεινός, -ή, -όν: grievous, painful, 1
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy, worthwhile, 1
ἀπο-στερέω: to rob, deprive of, 1
ἀ-φανίζω: to make invisible or disappear, 1
γυμνικός, -ή, -όν: of gymnastic exercise, 1
εἴ-περ: if really, if actually, 1
εὐ-δαίμων, -ον: happy, well off, 1
ζάω: to live, 4

- 1 δόξειεν ἂν: *would...*; aor. potential opt.
κατὰ...: *corresponding to...*
τῶν κύκλῳ: *circumstances*; 'things around'
κύκλῳ is an adv. in the attributive position
- 2 οἷον...γίγνεται: *which sort of thing...*; 'just
as,' the antecedent is the preceding clause
κα(ί) (ἐ)ν: *experience*; perfect πάσχω
- 3 τοῖς πύκταις: *for...*; dat. of interest
ἡδύ (ἐστί)ν
οὐ ἔνεκα: (*that*) *for the sake of which*; i.e.
the purpose; in apposition to τέλος
ὁ στέφανος...τιμαί: in apposition to τέλος
- 4 τὸ δὲ τύπτεσθαι (ἐστί)ν: *but...*; subject
εἴπερ σάρκινοι (ἐστί)ν: *if (they are) really
flesh and blood*
καὶ λυπηρόν: nom. pred. with ἀλγεινόν
- 5 καὶ πᾶς ὁ πόνος (ἐστί)ν ἀλγεινός καὶ
λυπηρός: ellipsis and adverbial καί, 'also'
τὸ...εἶναι: *these (pains)...*; ταῦτα is acc.
subj. and πολλὰ is acc. pred.
- 6 μικρόν ὃν: *since...*; causal pres. pple εἰμί

κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, ring; circumstances, 2
μέγιστος, -η, -ον: very large, greatest, most
important, 4
πόνος, ὁ: work, toil, 2
πύκτης, -ου, ὁ: boxer, 1
σάρκινος, -η, -ον: of flesh, 1
στέφανος, ὁ: crown, 1
τιμή, ἡ: honor; state offices, 8
τραῦμα, τό: wound, damage, disaster, 1
τύπτω: to strike, beat, 3

- τὸ οὐ ἔνεκα: *that for the sake of which*; i.e.
the purpose; nom. subj.
- 7 δὴ: *then, therefore*; inferential
καί: *also*
τὸ περὶ τὴν ἀνδρείαν (τέλος)
- 8 λυπηρὰ: nom. pred.
τῷ ἀνδρείῳ καὶ ἄκοντι: *for...*; dat. interest
- 9 ὅτι (ἐστί)ν καλόν: *because...*
ὅτι (ἐστί)ν αἰσχροὺς: *because...*
τὸ μή: *not to (do) so*; articular inf. and
logical subject
- 10 ὅσῳ ἂν μᾶλλον...πᾶσαν...μᾶλλον: *the
more complete...the more...*; lit. 'by as
much more complete...(by this much)
more,' the relative ὅσῳ is dat. of degree of
difference and modifies μᾶλλον
ἂν...ἔχη...ῆ: *has...is*; general rel. clause
τῷ τοιούτῳ: *to...*; dat. interest
- 12 ζῆν: α-contract inf. ζάω
ἄξιον (ἐστί)ν: (*it is*)...; impersonal
μεγίστων ἀγαθῶν: *from...*; gen. separation

στερείται εἰδώς, λυπηρὸν δὲ τοῦτο. ἀλλ' οὐδὲν ἦττον ἀνδρείους,
 ἴσως δὲ καὶ μᾶλλον, ὅτι τὸ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ καλὸν ἀντ'
 ἐκείνων αἰρεῖται. οὐ δὴ ἐν ἀπάσαις ταῖς ἀρεταῖς τὸ ἡδέως 15
 ἐνεργεῖν ὑπάρχει, πλὴν ἐφ' ὅσον τοῦ τέλους ἐφάπτεται.
 στρατιώτας δ' οὐδὲν ἴσως κωλύει μὴ τοὺς τοιούτους κρατίστους
 εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἦττον μὲν ἀνδρείους, ἄλλο δ' ἀγαθὸν μη-
 δὲν ἔχοντας· ἑτοιμοὶ γὰρ οὗτοι πρὸς τοὺς κινδύνους, καὶ τὸν
 βίον πρὸς μικρὰ κέρδη καταλλάττονται. περὶ μὲν οὖν 20
 ἀνδρείας ἐπὶ τοσοῦτον εἰρήσθω· τί δ' ἐστίν, οὐ χαλεπὸν τύπῳ
 γε περιλαβεῖν ἐκ τῶν εἰρημένων.

10. Μετὰ δὲ ταύτην περὶ σωφροσύνης λέγωμεν· δοκοῦσι
 γὰρ τῶν ἀλόγων μερῶν αὐταὶ εἶναι αἱ ἀρεταί. ὅτι μὲν 24

ἄ-λογος, -ον: irrational, unreasonable, 4
 ἀντί: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν: every, all, quite all, 5
 βίος, ὁ: life, 5
 ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον: that, those, 8
 ἐν-εργεῖν: to be active, actualize, operate, 5
 ἐτοῖμος, -η, -ον: ready, prepared, at hand, 1
 ἐφ-άπτω: lay hold of, attain (gen.), 1
 ἡδέως: pleasantly, sweetly, 1
 κατ-αλλάττω: exchange, barter, 1
 κέρδος, -εος, τό: gain; advantage, profit, 1

13 εἰδώς: nom. sg. pple οἶδα

λυπηρὸν δὲ τοῦτο (ἐστίν): almost
 parenthetical

14 καί: *in fact*

μᾶλλον (ἀνδρείους)

ὅτι: *because*

15 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential

τὸ...ἐνεργεῖν: i.e. there is pleasure in
 exercising the virtue

16 ἐ(πὶ) ὅσον: *for as much as*

τοῦ τέλους: partitive gen. is the common
 obj. of verbs of holding and touching

17 στρατιώτας: professional soldiers; i.e.
 mercenaries instead of citizen-soldiers

κράτιστος, -η, -ον: strongest, mightiest, 3

κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 2

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4

μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7

περι-λαμβάνω: to embrace, comprehend, 1

πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 6

πόλεμος, ὁ: war, 4

στρατιώτης, -ου, ὁ: soldier, 3

τοσοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: so great, so many, 3

τύπος, ὁ: mark, outline; sketch, 5

ὑπ-άρχω: to exist, is possible, 4

μὴ...εἶναι: *from*...; after verbs of hindering
 or fearing (S2740)

18 ἦττον: comparative adv.

ἑτοιμοὶ (εἰσίν): pred.

ἐπὶ: *up to*...; expressing extent

21 εἰρήσθω: *let*...; 3s pf. pass. imperative

λέγω (ἔρέω)

χαλεπὸν (ἐστίν): *it*...; impersonal

τύπῳ: *in*...; dat. of manner

22 γε: *at least, at all events*; restrictive

εἰρημένων: pf. pass. λέγω (ἔρέω)

23 λέγωμεν: *let*...; 1p hortatory subj.

24 τῶν ἀλόγων μερῶν: gen. quality as pred.

οὖν μεσότης ἐστὶ περὶ ἡδονὰς ἢ σωφροσύνη, εἴρηται ἡμῖν· 25
 ἦττον γὰρ καὶ οὐχ ὁμοίως ἐστὶ περὶ τὰς λύπας· ἐν τοῖς
 αὐτοῖς δὲ καὶ ἡ ἀκολασία φαίνεται. περὶ ποίας οὖν τῶν
 ἡδονῶν, νῦν ἀφορίσωμεν. διηρησθῶσαν δὴ αἱ ψυχικαὶ καὶ
 αἱ σωματικαί, οἷον φιλοτιμία φιλομάθεια· ἐκάτερος γὰρ
 τούτων χαίρει, οὗ φιλητικός ἐστίν, οὐδὲν πάσχοντος τοῦ σώ- 30
 ματος, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον τῆς διανοίας· οἱ δὲ περὶ τὰς τοιαύ-
 τας ἡδονὰς οὔτε σώφρονες οὔτε ἀκόλαστοι λέγονται. ὁμοίως
 δ' οὐδ' οἱ περὶ τὰς ἄλλας ὅσαι μὴ σωματικαὶ εἰσιν· τοὺς
 γὰρ φιλομύθους καὶ διηγητικούς καὶ περὶ τῶν τυχόντων
 κατατρίβοντας τὰς ἡμέρας ἀδολέσχας, ἀκολάστους δ' οὐ 35

ἀδολέσχης, -ου, ὁ: prattler, idle talker, 1

ἀφ-ορίζω: to define, mark off, 3

δι-αιρέω: to divide, distinguish, separate, 3

δι-α-νοία, ἡ: intellect, thought, 2

δι-ηγητικός, -ή, -όν: fond of narrating, 1

ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5

ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 1

κατα-τρίβω: to spend, wear down, 1

25 εἴρηται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἔρέω)

ἡμῖν: dat. of agent with pf. pass. verb

26 ἐστὶ: i.e. ἡ σωφροσύνη

27 τῶν ἡδονῶν: partitive gen.

28 ἀφορίσωμεν: *let...*; 1p aor. hortatory subj.

διηρησθῶσαν: *let...*; pf. imperative
 διαιρέω

δὴ: *accordingly, now*; marking a transition
 αἱ ψυχικαὶ (ἀρεταί)

29 οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'

30 οὗ: (*in that object*) of which; relative, the
 missing antecedent is obj. of χαίρει
 οὐδὲν...σώματος...διανοίας: gen. abs.

νῦν: now; as it is, 7

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7

σωματικός, -ή, -όν, τό: bodily, of the body, 4

φιλητικός, -ή, -όν: disposed to love (gen), 1

φιλο-μάθεια, ἡ: love of learning, 1

φιλο-μύθος, -ον: love of listening to stories, 1

φιλο-τιμία, ἡ: ambition, love of honor, 2

ψυχικός, -ή, -όν: of the soul, 1

31 τῆς διανοίας (πάσχοντας): a second
 subject of the gen. abs.

οἱ δὲ...ἡδονὰς: *those...*

32 οὔτε...οὔτε...: *neither...nor...*; nom. pred.

33 οὐδ(ὲ) οἱ...(οὔτε σώφρονες οὔτε
 ἀκόλαστοι λέγονται): *nor those...*; add
 verb and pred.

τοὺς γὰρ...ἡμέρας: *those...*;

34 τυχόντων: *chance things*; i.e. gossip,
 'things happening,' aor. pple τυγχάνω

35 ἀδολέσχας, ἀκολάστους δ' οὐ: acc. pred.

λέγομεν, οὐδὲ τοὺς λυπουμενούς ἐπὶ χρήμασιν ἢ φίλοις. περὶ
 δὲ τὰς σωματικὰς εἴη ἂν ἡ σωφροσύνη, οὐ πάσας δὲ οὐδὲ
 ταύτας· οἱ γὰρ χαίροντες τοῖς διὰ τῆς ὄψεως, οἷον χρώ-
 μασι καὶ σχήμασι καὶ γραφῇ, οὔτε σώφρονες οὔτε ἀκό-
 λαστοι λέγονται· καίτοι δόξειεν ἂν εἶναι καὶ ὥς δεῖ χαί- 5
 ρειν καὶ τούτοις, καὶ καθ' ὑπερβολὴν καὶ ἔλλειψιν. ὁμοίως
 δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς περὶ τὴν ἀκοήν· τοὺς γὰρ ὑπερβεβλημένως
 χαίροντας μέλεισιν ἢ ὑποκρίσει οὐθὲς ἀκολάστους λέγει, οὐδὲ
 τοὺς ὥς δεῖ σώφρονας. οὐδὲ τοὺς περὶ τὴν ὁσμήν, πλὴν κατὰ
 συμβεβηκός· τοὺς γὰρ χαίροντας μῆλων ἢ ῥόδων ἢ θυμα- 10
 μάτων ὁσμαῖς οὐ λέγομεν ἀκολάστους, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον τοὺς
 μύρων ἢ ὄψων· χαίρουσι γὰρ τούτοις οἱ ἀκόλαστοι, ὅτι

ἀκοή, ἡ: hearing, 1

γραφῇ, ἡ: drawing, painting; indictment, 1

καί-τοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 2

μέλος, -έος, τό: song, tune; limb, 1

μῆλον, τό: fruit, tree-fruit, apple, 1

μύρον, τό: perfume, sweet oil, myrrh, 1

ὁσμή, ἡ: scent, smell, 5

ὄψων, τό: cooked or savory dish, 2

ὄψις, -εως, ἡ: vision; appearance; face, 2

1 λέγομεν: *we call (x) (y)*; governs a double
 acc. (acc. obj. and pred.)

οὐδὲ: *not even*

ἐπὶ...: *at...*; or 'for...' + dat. expressing the
 motive with verbs of emotion (S1689.2c)

2 εἴη ἂν: *would...*; potential opt. εἰμί

οὐ (περὶ) πάσας δὲ οὐδὲ ταύτας: *but not
 even...*

3 τοῖς...: *at those things...*; dat. obj. of
 χαίρω; preposition in attributive position

οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which sort'

5 δόξειεν ἂν...τούτοις: *it would seem to be
 possible in fact to enjoy these also as one
 ought ...*; 3s aor. potential opt.; εἶναι here
 means 'to be able/possible'

6 καὶ κατ(ὰ)...καί...: *both in...and...; 'in*

πλὴν: *except, but (+ gen.)*, 6

ῥόδον, τό: *rose*, 1

συμβαίνει: *to happen, occur, result*, 8

σχῆμα, -ατος, τό: *form, shape*, 1

σωματικός, -ή, -όν, τό: *bodily, of the body*, 4

ὑπερβεβλημένως: *exceedingly*, 1

ὑπό-κρισις, -εως ἡ: *acting (play); replying* 1

φίλος-η-ον: *dear, friendly; noun friend, kin* 3

χρήμα, -ατος, τό: *money; property*, 5

χρῶμα, -ατος, τό: *color, complexion*, 1

respect to...'

7 ἐν τοῖς: *among those*; preposition in
 attributive position

8 μέλε-σιν ἢ ὑποκρίσε-ι: *dat. pl. and sg. obj.*

οὐθὲς: *οὐδεῖς*

οὐδὲ τοὺς ὥς δεῖ (χαίροντας) σώφροντας

(λέγει) ...: *nor those...as...; acc. obj. and*

pred.; add verb from above

9 ὥς δεῖ: *as...; in the attributive position*

οὐδὲ περὶ τὴν ὁσμήν (χαίροντας) : *nor...*

κατὰ συμβεβηκός: *by accident*; 'according
 to what happens by chance'; neut. pf. ppl

συμβαίνω often used as a noun

11 ὁσμαῖς: *dat. obj. of χαίροντας*

τοὺς μύρων ἢ ὄψων (ὁσμαῖς χαίροντας)

12 ὅτι: *because...*

διὰ τούτων ἀνάμνησις γίνεται αὐτοῖς τῶν ἐπιθυμημάτων. ἴδοι
 δ' ἂν τις καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους, ὅταν πεινώσι, χαίροντας ταῖς
 τῶν βρωμάτων ὁσμαῖς· τὸ δὲ τοιούτοις χαίρειν ἀκολάστου· 15
 τούτῳ γὰρ ἐπιθυμήματα ταῦτα. οὐκ ἔστι δὲ οὐδ' ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις
 ζώοις κατὰ ταύτας τὰς αἰσθήσεις ἡδονὴ πλὴν κατὰ συμ-
 βεβηκός. οὐδὲ γὰρ ταῖς ὁσμαῖς τῶν λαγῶν αἱ κύνες
 χαίρουσιν ἀλλὰ τῇ βρώσει, τὴν δ' αἰσθησιν ἢ ὁσμή ἐποίη-
 σεν· οὐδ' ὁ λέων τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ βοῦς ἀλλὰ τῇ ἐδωδῇ· 20
 δ' ἐγγύς ἐστι, διὰ τῆς φωνῆς ἦσθετο, καὶ χαίρειν δὴ ταύτη
 φαίνεται· ὁμοίως δ' οὐδ' ἰδὼν “ἢ [εὐρών] ἔλαφον ἢ ἄγριον
 αἶγα,” ἀλλ' ὅτι βορὰν ἔξει. περὶ τὰς τοιαύτας δ' ἡδονὰς
 ἢ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἢ ἀκολασία ἐστὶν ὧν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ 24

ἄγριος, -α, -ον: wild, fierce, 1

αἶξ, αἶγος, ὁ, ἡ: goat, 1

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, feel, learn, realize, 3

αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7

ἀνάμνησις, ἡ: recollection, calling to mind, 1

βορά, ἡ: meat; food, 1

βοῦς, βοός, ὁ: ox, 1

βρώμα, βρώματος τό: food, meat, 2

βρώσις, -εως, ἡ: meat, eating, 1

ἐγγύς: near to (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 3

ἐδωδή, ἡ: the eating; food, meat, 1

ἐλαφος, ὁ: deer, 1

ἐπι-θύμημα, -ατος, τό: object of desire, 2

εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 2

ζῶον, τό: animal, 7

κύων, κυνός, ὁ: dog, 2

λαγῶς, ὁ: hare, rabbit, 1

λέων, λέοντος, ὁ: lion, 1

ὁσμή, ἡ: scent, smell, 5

ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 7

πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 3

πλὴν: except, but (+ gen.), 6

συμβαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8

φωνή, ἡ: sound; speech, voice, 3

13 αὐτοῖς: *for them*; i.e. for the ἀκόλαστοι

ἴδοι ἂν: *might...*; aor. potential opt. ὁράω

14 ὅταν πεινώσι: general temporal clause
with 3p pres. subj.

15 δέ: *but*

ἀκολάστου (ἐστίν): (*is the mark of*)...;
gen. of quality as pred.

16 τούτῳ: *to...*; dat. of interest

ταῦτα (ἐστίν)

οὐκ ἔστι...οὐδὲ: *and there is not...even...*

κατὰ: *in (respect to)...*

17 κατὰ συμβεβηκός: *by accident*; ‘according
to what happens by chance;’ neut. pf. pple
συμβαίνω often used as a noun

20 ὁ λέων (χαίρει) τῇ φωνῇ τοῦ βοῦς ἀλλὰ

τῇ ἐδωδῇ

ὅτι: *that...*; ind. disc.

21 ἦσθετο: aor. mid.

δή: *therefore, then*; inferential

ταύτη (φωνῇ): *because of...*; dat. of cause

22 οὐδὲ: *nor*

ἰδὼν (χαίρει): (*he enjoy*)...; + aor. pple
ὁράω

[εὐρών]: omit from translation. The editor
suggests that it was inserted at a later time.

23 ἔξει: fut. ἔχω

24 ὧν...κοινωνεῖ: *which...*; relative and
partitive gen. obj. of κοινωνεῖ

καὶ: *also*

ζῶα κοινωνεῖ, ὅθεν ἀνδραποδάδεις καὶ θηριώδεις φαίνονται· 25
 αὗται δ' εἰσὶν ἀφή καὶ γεῦσις. φαίνονται δὲ καὶ τῇ γεύ-
 σει ἐπὶ μικρὸν ἢ οὐθὲν χρῆσθαι· τῆς γὰρ γεύσεώς ἐστιν ἡ
 κρίσις τῶν χυμῶν, ὅπερ ποιούσιν οἱ τοὺς οἶνους δοκιμάζοντες
 καὶ τὰ ὄψα ἀρτύνοντες· οὐ πάνυ δὲ χαίρουσι τούτοις, ἢ οὐχ
 οἷ γε ἀκόλαστοι, ἀλλὰ τῇ ἀπολαύσει, ἢ γίνεται πᾶσα 30
 δι' ἀφῆς καὶ ἐν σιτίοις καὶ ἐν ποτοῖς καὶ τοῖς ἀφροδισίοις
 λεγομένοις. διὸ καὶ ἤϋξατό τις ὀψοφάγος ὦν τὸν φά-
 ρυγα αὐτῷ μακρότερον γεράνου γενέσθαι, ὥς ἡδόμενος τῇ

ἀνδραποδάδης, -ες: slavish, servile, 2
 ἀπόλαυσις, -εως, ἡ: enjoyment, 1
 ἀρτύω: to arrange, make ready, 1
 ἀφή, ἡ: sense of touch, touch, 5
 ἀφροδίσιον, τό: pleasure of Aphrodite, 1
 γέρανος, ὁ: crane, 1
 γεῦσις, -εως ἡ: sense of taste, taste, 3
 δοκιμάζω: to test, scrutinize; approve, 1
 εὔχομαι: to pray, vow; boast, 3
 ζῶον, τό: animal, 7
 ἡδομαι: feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4
 θηρί-ωδης, -ες: bestial, savage, 2
 κοινωνέω: have a share of, partake in (gen) 2
 κρίσις, -εως, ἡ: judgment, decision, 2

25 κοινωνεῖ: 3s with 3p neut. subject
 ἐπὶ μικρὸν: *a little*; 'over a little'
 οὐθὲν: οὐδὲν
 27 τῆς γὰρ γεύσεώς: *of taste*; gen. quality as
 pred.
 28 ὅπερ....: *which very thing*; 'just as,' the
 entire clause is the antecedent
 30 γε: *at least*; restrictive
 (χαίρουσι) τῇ ἀπολαύσει
 30 πᾶσα: *entire(ly)*; modifies the relative ἢ,
 translate as an adv.
 32 λεγομένοις: *so-called*; pass.

μακρός, ἄ, ὄν: long, far, distant, large, 1
 ὅ-θεν: for which reason; from where, 7
 οἶνος, ὁ: wine, 1
 ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very
 thing which, 9
 ὀψο-φάγος, ὁ: fine-diner, 1
 ὄψον, τό: cooked or savory dish, 2
 πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6
 ποτός, ὁ: drink, 1
 σιτίον, τό: grain, bread; provisions, 2
 φάρυγξ, φάρυγος, ἡ: throat, 1
 χρᾶομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.), 7
 χυμός, ὁ: flavor; juice, 1

ἠϋξατό: aor. mid.
 ὦν: pres. pple εἰμί modifying τις
 τὸν φάρυγα...γενέσθαι: *that...*; ind. disc.
 33 (ἐ)αυτῷ: reflexive, dat. of possession:
 translate as a possessive
 γεράνου: *than...*; gen. of comparison
 ὥς ἡδόμενος....: *on the grounds that...*, *in*
the belief that...; 'since' ὥς + pple
 expressing an alleged cause from a
 character's point of view

ἀφῆ. κοινοτάτη δὴ τῶν αἰσθήσεων καθ' ἣν ἡ ἀκολασία·
καὶ δόξειεν ἂν δικαίως ἐπονείδιστος εἶναι, ὅτι οὐχ ἢ ἄνθρω-
ποὶ ἐσμεν ὑπάρχει, ἀλλ' ἢ ζῶα. τὸ δὴ τοιούτοις χαίρειν
καὶ μάλιστα ἀγαπᾶν θηριῶδες. καὶ γὰρ αἱ ἐλευθεριώτα-
ται τῶν διὰ τῆς ἀφῆς ἡδονῶν ἀφήρηται, οἷον αἱ ἐν τοῖς 5
γυμνασίοις διὰ τρίψεως καὶ τῆς θερμασίας γινόμεναι· οὐ
γὰρ περὶ πᾶν τὸ σῶμα ἢ τοῦ ἀκολάστου ἀφή, ἀλλὰ περὶ
τινα μέρη. 11. τῶν δ' ἐπιθυμιῶν αἱ μὲν κοινὰ δοκοῦσιν εἶναι,
αἱ δ' ἴδιοι καὶ ἐπίθετοι· οἷον ἡ μὲν τῆς τροφῆς φυσική·
πᾶς γὰρ ἐπιθυμεῖ ὁ ἐνδεὴς ξηρᾶς ἢ ὑγρᾶς τροφῆς, ὅτε δὲ 10
ἀμφοῖν, καὶ εὐνῆς, φησὶν Ὅμηρος, ὁ νέος καὶ ἀκμάζων·
τὸ δὲ τοιαῦδε ἢ τοιαῦδε, οὐκέτι πᾶς, οὐδὲ τῶν αὐτῶν. διὸ

ἀγαπάω: to love, be fond of; satisfy, 2
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: perception, sensation, 7
ἀκμάζω: to be in full bloom, flourish, 1
ἄμφο: both (dual), 8
ἀφ-αιρέω: to take away, exclude, 2
ἀφή, ἡ: sense of touch, touch, 5
γυμνάσιον, τό: bodily exercise; gymnasium, 3
δικαίως: justly, rightly, lawfully, fairly, 3
ἐλευθέριος, -α, -ον: generous, liberal, 4
ἐν-δεής, -ές: in need of, lacking, deficient, 1
ἐπ-ονείδιστος, -ον: worthy of reproach, 2
ἐπίθετος, -ον: acquired, 1
εὐνή, ἡ: bed, 1
ζῶον, τό: animal, 7
ἢ: in so far as, in which way, by which way, 2
θερμασία, ἡ: warmth, heat, 1

θηρί-ώδης, -ες: bestial, savage, 2
ἴδιος, -α, -ον: peculiar, private, one's own, 5
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common(place); public, 7
μέρος, -έος, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
νέος, -α, -ον: young; new; *subst.* youth, 3
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry, 1
Ὅμηρος, ὁ: Homer, 4
ὅτε: sometimes, at times (ποτέ), 9
οὐκ-έτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 7
τοιόσδε, -άδε, -όνδε: this here sort, such, 3
τρίψις, -εως, ἡ: rubbing, wearing away, 1
τροφή, ἡ: food; rearing, upbringing, 3
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: moist, wet, 1
ὑπ-άρχω: to exist, is possible, 4
φυσικός, -ή, -όν: produced by nature, natural, 6

- 1 κοινοτάτη (ἐστίν): (*it is*)...; ἀφή is subject
δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential
καθ' ἣν (ἐστίν): *in which (there is)*
2 δόξειεν ἂν: *would*...; aor. potential opt.;
ἡ ἀκολασία is subject
ὅτι: *because*
ἢ ἄνθρωποι ἐσμεν: *in so far as we are*
humans; i.e. qua human; relative clause
3 ἢ ζῶα (ἐσμεν): *in so far as (we are)*
animals; i.e. qua animal
4 θηριῶδες (ἐστίν): *pred.*
καὶ γὰρ: *and in fact*
αἱ ἐλευθεριώταται: *the most befitting of a*
free man
5 ἀφήρηται: pf. pass. ἀφαιρέω

- οἷον: *for example*; 'in respect to which'
αἱ...γινόμεναι: *those (pleasures)*...
ἐν τοῖς γυμνασίοις: *in gymnasia*
6 τρίψεως: i.e. massages
θερμασίας: *warm baths or heat treatments*
7 πᾶν: *entire*
8 μέρη: μέρε-α
αἱ μὲν...αἱ δὲ: *these...those*; the accented
article is used as a demonstrative (S1107)
9 ἡ μὲν τῆς τροφῆς (ἐπιθυμία ἐστίν):
ὅτε δὲ ἀμφοῖν: *and sometimes*...; dual gen.
11 ὁ νέος καὶ ἀκμάζων (ἐπιθυμία)
τὸ δὲ τοιαῦδε...αὐτῶν: *but everyone no*
longer (desires) this sort of thing or that
sort of thing, not even of the same things

φαίνεται ἡμέτερον εἶναι. οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ἔχει γέ τι καὶ φυσικόν· ἕτερα γὰρ ἑτέροις ἐστὶν ἡδέα, καὶ ἓνια πᾶσιν ἡδίων τῶν τυχόντων. ἐν μὲν οὖν ταῖς φυσικαῖς ἐπιθυμίαις ὀλίγοι 15 ἀμαρτάνουσι καὶ ἐφ' ἓν, ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖον· τὸ γὰρ ἐσθίειν τὰ τυχόντα ἢ πίνειν ἕως ἂν ὑπερπλησθῇ, ὑπερβάλλειν ἐστὶ τὸ κατὰ φύσιν τῷ πληθύνει· ἀναπλήρωσις γὰρ τῆς ἐνδείας ἢ φυσικὴ ἐπιθυμία. διὸ λέγονται οὗτοι γαστρίμαργοι, ὥς παρὰ τὸ δέον πληροῦντες αὐτήν. τοιοῦτοι δὲ γίνονται οἱ λίαν 20 ἀνδραποδώδεις. περὶ δὲ τὰς ἰδίας τῶν ἡδονῶν πολλοὶ καὶ πολλαχῶς ἀμαρτάνουσιν. τῶν γὰρ φιλοτοιοῦτων λεγομένων ἢ τῷ χαίρειν οἷς μὴ δεῖ, ἢ τῷ μᾶλλον ἢ ὥς οἱ πολλοί, ἢ μὴ ὥς δεῖ, κατὰ πάντα δ' οἱ ἀκόλαστοι ὑπερ- 24

ἀναπληρώσις, -εως ἢ: fulfilling, filling, 1
ἀνδραποδώδης, -ες: slavish, servile, 2
γαστρίμαργος, -ον: gluttonous, 1
δέον, τό: what is right, proper, 3
εἷς, μία, ἓν: one, single, alone, 9
ἐν-δεια, ἢ: lack, want, 3
ἐσθίω: to eat, 2
ἕως: until, as long as, 2
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 1
ἴδιος, -α, -ον: peculiar, private, one's own, 5
λίαν: very, exceedingly, 1

- 13 φαίνεται ἡμέτερον εἶναι: (*this desire seems to be (peculiarly) our own*)
οὐ μὴν ἀλλ(ᾶ): *nevertheless*
ἔχει γέ τι καὶ φυσικόν: *it has, at any rate, something natural also;*
14 ἑτέροις: *for different people;* dat. interest
ἡδέα (εἰσίν): nom. neut. pl. ἡδύς
ἓνια (εἰσίν): *experience;* perfect πάσχω
πᾶσιν: *for...;* dat. interest
ἡδίο(ν)α: neut. pl. comparative ἡδύς, pred.
15 τυχόντων: *than chance things;* 'things happening,' aor. ppl. τυγχάνω and gen. of comparison
16 ἐφ' ἓν: *for one thing;* ἐπί + acc. expressing purpose (S1689.3d)
ἐπὶ τὸ πλεῖον: (*namely*) *for excess;* 'or more' in apposition
τὰ τυχόντα: *chance things;* see above; acc.
17 ἕως ἂν ὑπερπλησθῇ: *until one...;* general temporal clause with 3s aor. pass. subj.

μὴν: truly, surely, 5
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 6
παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9
πίνω: to drink, 1
πλήθος, ἢ: number, multitude; size, 2
πληρόω: to fill, 1
πολλαχῶς: in many ways, 2
ὑπερ-πίμπλημι: to overfill, stuff, 1
φιλο-τοιοῦτος, -ον: fond of such and such, 1
φυσικός, -ή, -όν: produced by nature, natural, 6

- 18 τὸ κατὰ φύσιν: *what is according to nature;* obj. of inf.
τῷ πληθύνει: *in...;* dat. of respect
19 ἡ φυσικὴ ἐπιθυμία (ἐστίν)
ὥς...πληροῦντες: *on the grounds that..., 'since,'* ὥς + ppl expresses an alleged cause from a character's point of view
20 παρὰ...: *contrary to...*
αὐτήν: i.e. ἐπιθυμίαν
22 τῶν φιλοτοιοῦτων: *among...;* partitive gen.
λεγομένων: *so-called;* pass.
ἢ...ἢ...ἢ...ἢ...: *either...or...or...or*
23 τῷ χαίρειν: *by...;* articular inf. and dat. of cause
οἷς μὴ δεῖ (χαίρειν): *whom...*
τῷ μᾶλλον (χαίρειν): *by...;* dat. of cause
ὥς οἱ πολλοί: *as (much as)...*; comparison
24 (τῷ) μὴ (χαίρειν): *not...*
κατὰ πάντα: *in (respect to) all things*

βάλλουσιν· καὶ γὰρ χαίρουσιν ἐνίοις οἷς οὐ δεῖ (μισητὰ 25
 γάρ), καὶ εἴ τισι δεῖ χαίρειν τῶν τοιούτων, μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ
 καὶ ἢ ὥς οἱ πολλοὶ χαίρουσιν. ἡ μὲν οὖν περὶ τὰς ἡδονὰς
 ὑπερβολὴ ὅτι ἀκολασία καὶ ψεκτόν, δῆλον· περὶ δὲ τὰς
 λύπας οὐχ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ τῆς ἀνδρείας τῷ ὑπομένειν λέγεται
 σῶφρων οὐδ' ἀκόλαστος τῷ μὴ, ἀλλ' ὁ μὲν ἀκόλαστος τῷ 30
 λυπεῖσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ ὅτι τῶν ἡδέων οὐ τυγχάνει
 (καὶ τὴν λύπην δὲ ποιεῖ αὐτῷ ἡ ἡδονή), ὁ δὲ σῶφρων τῷ
 μὴ λυπεῖσθαι τῇ ἀπουσίᾳ καὶ τῷ ἀπέχεσθαι τοῦ ἡδέος.

ἀπ-ουσία, ἡ: absence, 1

δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9

25 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*

οἷς οὐ δεῖ (χαίρειν): *which...*

μισητὰ (εἰσίν)

26 τισι: dat. pl. τις

μᾶλλον ἢ...ἢ...: *more than...and than...*

27 ὥς: *as (much as)...*; clause of comparison

28 ἡ...ὑπερβολὴ (ἐστίν): *that...*; place this
 nom. subj. within the following ὅτι clause

ὅτι...δῆλον (ἐστίν): *(it is) clear that...*;
 main verb; This construction is so common
 that it is often translated with the simple
 adverb 'clearly'

ψεκτόν: *a blameworthy thing*; neut. pred.

29 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*

τῷ ὑπομένειν: *by...*; articular inf. and dat.
 of cause; assume λύπας as object

μισητός, -η, -ον: hateful, odious, 1

ψεκτός, -ή, -όν: blameworthy, 3

οὐχ...λέγεται σῶφρων: *one is not called*

30 οὐδὲ (λέγεται) ἀκόλαστος τῷ μὴ

(ὑπομένειν): *nor is one called...*

ἀλλ' (λέγεται) ὁ μὲν ἀκόλαστος: add verb

τῷ λυπεῖσθαι: *by...*; dat. of cause

31 ὅτι: *because...*

τυγχάνει: governs a partitive gen.

32 ποιεῖ: i.e. causes

αὐτῷ: dat. of interest

(λέγεται) ὁ δὲ σῶφρων: *one (is called)...*

τῷ μὴ λυπεῖσθαι: *by...*; dat. of cause

τῇ ἀπουσίᾳ: *by...*; dat. of cause; i.e. of
 pleasure

τοῦ ἡδέος: *from...*; gen. of separation

Ὁ μὲν οὖν ἀκόλαστος ἐπιθυμεῖ τῶν ἡδέων πάντων ἢ τῶν μάλιστα, καὶ ἄγεται ὑπὸ τῆς ἐπιθυμίας ὥστε ἀντὶ τῶν ἄλλων ταῦθ' αἰρεῖσθαι· διὸ καὶ λυπεῖται καὶ ἀποτυγχάνων καὶ ἐπιθυμῶν· μετὰ λύπης γὰρ ἢ ἐπιθυμία· ἀτόπων δ' ἔοικε τὸ δι' ἡδονὴν λυπεῖσθαι. ἐλλείποντες δὲ τὰ περὶ τὰς ἡδονὰς καὶ ἥττον ἢ δεῖ χαίροντες οὐ πάνυ γίνονται· οὐ γὰρ ἀνθρωπικὴ ἐστὶν ἢ τοιαύτη ἀναισθησία· καὶ γὰρ τὰ λοιπὰ ζῶα διακρίνει τὰ βρώματα, καὶ τοῖς μὲν χαίρει τοῖς δ' οὐ· εἰ δὲ τῷ μηδὲν ἐστὶν ἡδὺν μηδὲ διαφέρει ἕτερον ἐτέρου, πόρρω ἂν εἴη τοῦ ἀνθρώπου εἶναι· οὐ τέτευχε δ' ὁ τοιοῦτος ὀνόματος διὰ τὸ μὴ πάνυ γίνεσθαι. ὁ δὲ σώφρων μέσως μὲν περὶ ταῦτ' ἔχει· οὕτε γὰρ ἡδεται οἷς μάλιστα ὁ ἀκόλαστος, ἀλλὰ μάλ-

ἄγω: to conduct, do; lead, bring, 3
 ἀν-αισθησία, ἢ: insensibility, 2
 ἀνθρωπικός, -ή, -όν: human, of a human, 2
 ἀντὶ: in return for, in place of (+ gen.), 8
 ἀπο-τυγχάνω: fail to attain (gen), 2
 ἄ-τοπος, -ον: strange, odd, extraordinary, 3
 βρῶμα, βρώματος τό: food, meat, 2
 δια-κρίνω: decide, settle; distinguish, 2
 ζῶον, τό: animal, 7

1 τῶν μάλιστα: *those especially (pleasant)*
 2 ὑπὸ: *by...*; gen. expressing agency
 ὥστε...αἰρεῖσθαι: *so as...*; result
 3 ταῦθ': ταῦτα
 καὶ...καὶ...καὶ...: *also...both...and...*
 4 ἡ ἐπιθυμία (ἐστίν)
 5 ἐλλείποντες: *(people)...*
 τὰ περὶ...: *(actions) regarding...*
 6 χαίροντες: *and (people)...*; governs ἥττον
 ἢ δεῖ
 γίνονται: i.e. exist
 7 καὶ γὰρ: *and in fact*
 8 τοῖς μὲν...τοῖς δ(έ): *some...other...*
 9 τῷ: *for someone*; alternative form for

ἡδομαι: feel pleasure, delight in (dat), 4
 μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 3
 μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 7
 μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 3
 ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 6
 πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 6
 πόρρω: far, far from, 3
 ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

indefinite τινί; dat. of interest
 μῆδε: *nor*
 ἐτέρου: *from...*; gen. of separation
 10 ἂν εἴη: *would...*; potential opt. εἰμί
 τοῦ...εἶναι: *from...*; articular inf. (-inf) εἰμί
 and gen. of separation
 τέτευχε: pf. τυγχάνω + partitive gen.
 11 τὸ...γίνεσθαι: *happening*
 μέσως ἔχει: ἔχω ('is disposed') + adv. is
 often equiv. to εἰμί + pred.
 οἷς (ἡδεται)...: *in what*; '(in those things) in
 which;' the missing antecedent is dat. obj.
 and the relative clause

λον δυσχεραίνει, οὐδ' ὅλως οἷς μὴ δεῖ οὐδὲ σφόδρα τοιούτῳ
 οὐδενί, οὗτ' ἀπόντων λυπείται οὐδ' ἐπιθυμεί, ἢ μετρίως, οὐδὲ
 μᾶλλον ἢ δεῖ, οὐδ' ὅτε μὴ δεῖ, οὐδ' ὅλως τῶν τοιούτων οὐδέν· 15
 ὅσα δὲ πρὸς ὑγίειάν ἐστιν ἢ πρὸς εὐεξίαν ἡδέα ὄντα, τούτων
 ὀρέγεται μετρίως καὶ ὥς δεῖ, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἡδέων μὴ ἐμ-
 ποδίων τούτοις ὄντων ἢ παρὰ τὸ καλὸν ἢ ὑπὲρ τὴν οὐσίαν. ὁ
 γὰρ οὕτως ἔχων μᾶλλον ἀγαπᾷ τὰς τοιαύτας ἡδονὰς τῆς
 ἀξίας· ὁ δὲ σώφρων οὐ τοιοῦτος, ἀλλ' ὥς ὁ ὀρθὸς λόγος. 20

12. Ἐκουσίῳ δὲ μᾶλλον ἔουκεν ἢ ἀκολασία τῆς δειλίας.
 ἢ μὲν γὰρ δι' ἡδονήν, ἢ δὲ διὰ λύπην, ὧν τὸ μὲν αἰρετόν,
 τὸ δὲ φευκτόν· καὶ ἢ μὲν λύπη ἐξίστησι καὶ φθείρει τὴν
 τοῦ ἔχοντος φύσιν, ἢ δὲ ἡδονὴ οὐδὲν τοιοῦτο ποιεῖ. μᾶλλον 24

ἀγαπάω: to love, be fond of; satisfy, 2

αἰρετός, -ή, -όν: choiceworthy, chosen, 5

ἀξία, ἡ: worth, value, 2

ἀπ-εἰμι: to be away, be absent, 1

δειλία, ἡ: cowardice, 4

δυσ-χεραίνω: to feel annoyance, be vexed, 3

ἐμ-πόδιος, -ον: impeding, hindering (dat), 1

ἐξ-ίστημι: to alter; stupefy; displace, 2

εὖ-εξία, ἡ: well being, being disposed well, 1

μετρίως: moderately, in due measure, 2

ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6

ὀρθός, -ή, -όν: straight, upright, right, 6

οὐσία, ἡ: substance, essence; wealth, 2

παρά: from, at, to (the side of); contrary, 9

σφόδρα: violently, vehemently, 2

ὑγίεια, ἡ: health, 4

ὑπὲρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); beyond, 5

φευκτός, -ον: to be avoided or escaped, 2

φθείρω: to destroy, ruin, corrupt, 8

13 οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ...: *not even...nor...*

(ἦδεται) οἷς μὴ δεῖ: add verb from l. 12

τοιούτῳ οὐδενί: obj. of ἦδεται

14 οὗτ(ε): *and not*

ἀπόντων: (*these things*) *being absent*; gen.

abs. with missing noun; ἀπ-εἰμι

οὐδὲ...οὐδὲ...: *nor...nor...*

μετρίως (λυπείται καὶ ἐπιθυμεί)

15 οὐδέν: *any*; positive following οὐδέ

16 ὅσα...ἐστίν...εὐεξίαν: *as many things as...*

the antecedent is the following τούτων

ὄντα: pplē eἰμί modifying ὅσα

τούτων: partitive gen. obj. of main verb

17 μὴ...ὄντων: (*if*) *not...*; pplē eἰμί is conditional in sense (thus, μὴ instead of οὐ); ἐμποδίων is gen. pred. and governs a dat.

18 παρὰ...: *contrary to...*

ὑπὲρ τὴν οὐσίαν: i.e. beyond his means to pay; οὐσία carries the ordinary meaning of 'wealth' or 'property' in this context

ὁ...οὕτως ἔχων: *the one...*; ἔχω ('is disposed') + adv.

19 τῆς ἀξίας: *than...*; gen. of comparison

20 ὥς ὁ ὀρθὸς λόγος: *as...*; supply a missing verb: 'dictates' or 'requires'

21 τῆς δειλίας: gen. of comparison

22 ἢ μὲν...ἢ δὲ...: *this one...this one...*; i.e. ἀκολασία and δειλία; the accented articles are in fact demonstratives (S1107)

23 ὧν: *of which*; partitive gen. i.e. pleasure and pain

τὸ μὲν (ἐστίν)...τὸ δὲ (ἐστίν)...: *one thing...the other thing...*

δὴ ἐκούσιον. διὸ καὶ ἐπονειδιστότερον· καὶ γὰρ ἐθισθῆναι ῥᾶον 25
 πρὸς αὐτά· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ βίῳ τὰ τοιαῦτα, καὶ οἱ
 ἐθισμοὶ ἀκίνδυνοι, ἐπὶ δὲ τῶν φοβερῶν ἀνάπαλιν. δόξειε
 δ' ἂν οὐχ ὁμοίως ἐκούσιον ἢ δειλία εἶναι τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστον·
 αὕτη μὲν γὰρ ἄλυπος, ταῦτα δὲ διὰ λύπην ἐξίστησιν, ὥστε
 καὶ τὰ ὅπλα ῥίπτειν καὶ τᾶλλα ἀσχημονεῖν· διὸ καὶ δοκεῖ 30
 βίαια εἶναι. τῷ δ' ἀκολάστῳ ἀνάπαλιν τὰ μὲν καθ' ἕκαστα
 ἐκούσια (ἐπιθυμοῦντι γὰρ καὶ ὀρεγομένῳ), τὸ δ' ὅλον ἦττον·
 οὐθεὶς γὰρ ἐπιθυμεῖ ἀκόλαστος εἶναι. τὸ δ' ὄνομα τῆς ἀκο-
 λασίας καὶ ἐπὶ τὰς παιδικὰς ἀμαρτίας φέρομεν· ἔχουσι

ἀ-κίνδυνος, -ον: without danger or risk, 1
 ἄ-λυπος, -ον: without pain, 1
 ἀμαρτία, ἡ: mistake, failure, fault; guilt, 3
 ἀνά-παλιν: in the opposite way, back again, 5
 ἀσχημονέω: to disgrace oneself, 1
 βίαιος, -α, -ον: compulsory, forcible, 6
 βίος, ὁ: life, 5
 δειλία, ἡ: cowardice, 4
 ἐθίζω: to accustom, habituate, train, 9
 ἐθισμός, ὁ: habit, practice, 1
 ἐκούσια, ἡ: voluntary behavior, 8

25 δὴ: *therefore, then*; inferential
 ἐκούσιον (ἢ ἀκολασία ἐστίν): neut. pred.
 ἐπονειδιστότερον (ἢ ἀκολασία ἐστίν): neut.
 pred.
 καὶ γὰρ: *for in fact*
 ἐθισθῆναι: aor. pass. dep. inf.
 ῥᾶον (ἐστίν): *it is...; impersonal*
 26 πρὸς αὐτά: either (1) *against them*; i.e.
 against acts of intemperance or (2) *in*
regard to them; i.e. acts of temperance
 27 ἀκίνδυνοι (εἰσίν)
 ἐπὶ...: *in the case of...*
 ἀνάπαλιν (ἐστίν)
 δόξειε δ' ἂν: *would...; aor. potential opt.*
 28 τοῖς καθ' ἕκαστον: *to particular cases (of*
cowardess); 'to those each by each,' dat. of
special adv. ὁμοίως
 29 αὕτη (ἐστίν): i.e. δειλία
 ταῦτα: i.e. τὰ ἕκαστα, particular cases of
 cowardess; neut. pl. subject of 3s verb
 ἐξίστησιν: 3s pres.; supply 'a person' as obj.

ἐξ-ίστημι: to alter; stupefy; displace, 2
 ἐπ-ονείδιστος, -ον: worthy of reproach, 2
 ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 1
 ὄνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 6
 ὄπλον, τό: arms; tool, implement, 2
 ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
 παιδικός, -ή, -όν: of a child, 1
 ῥᾶον: easier, 1
 ῥίπτω: to throw, cast, hurl, 3
 φέρω: to bear, carry, bring, borne along, 6
 ὥστε: so that, that, so as to, 9

ὥστε: *so as + infs.; result clause*
 30 ῥίπτειν: i.e. in retreat
 τ(ὰ) ἄλλα: *in other respects*; acc. of respect
 δοκεῖ: *they seem*; add τὰ ἕκαστα as subject
 31 τῷ ἀκολάστῳ: *for the indulgent man...;*
dat. of interest
 δέ: *but*
 τὰ καθ' ἕκαστα (εἰσίν): *particular cases (of*
intemperance)
 32 ἐπιθυμοῦντι γὰρ καὶ ὀρεγομένῳ: *for (the*
indulgent man) is...; causal pres. pples
 modifying τῷ ἀκολάστῳ; the use of γὰρ
 is awkward and redundant
 τὸ ὅλον (ἐστίν) ἦττον (ἐκούσιον): *the*
whole...; i.e. ἀκολασία as a whole instead
of in particular cases
 33 οὐθεὶς: οὐδεὶς
 34 ἐπὶ: *onto...;*
 φέρομεν: *we apply*; as often with ἐπί

γάρ τινα ὁμοιότητα. πότερον δ' ἀπὸ ποτέρου καλεῖται, οὐθὲν
 πρὸς τὰ νῦν διαφέρει, δῆλον δ' ὅτι τὸ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ προ-
 τέρου. οὐ κακῶς δ' ἔοικε μετενηνέχθαι· κεκολάσθαι γὰρ δεῖ
 τὸ τῶν αἰσchrῶν ὀρεγόμενον καὶ πολλὴν αὖξισιν ἔχον, τοιοῦ-
 τον δὲ μάλιστα ἢ ἐπιθυμία καὶ ὁ παῖς· κατ' ἐπιθυμίαν γὰρ 5
 ζῶσι καὶ τὰ παιδία, καὶ μάλιστα ἐν τούτοις ἢ τοῦ ἡδέος
 ὄρεξις. εἰ οὖν μὴ ἔσται εὐπειθεὶς καὶ ὑπὸ τὸ ἄρχον, ἐπὶ πολὺ
 ἥξει· ἁπλῆστος γὰρ ἢ τοῦ ἡδέος ὄρεξις καὶ πανταχόθεν τῷ
 ἀνοήτῳ, καὶ ἢ τῆς ἐπιθυμίας ἐνέργεια αὖξει τὸ συγγενές,
 κὰν μεγάλοι καὶ σφοδραὶ ὧσι, καὶ τὸν λογισμὸν ἐκκρούουσιν. 10
 διὸ δεῖ μετρίας εἶναι αὐτὰς καὶ ὀλίγας, καὶ τῷ λόγῳ μη-
 θεὶν ἐναντιοῦσθαι—τὸ δὲ τοιοῦτον εὐπειθεὶς λέγομεν καὶ κεκο-

ἀ-νόητος, -ον: senseless, foolish, insensible, 1
 ἄ-πληστος, -ον: unfulfilled, insatiate, 1
 ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 3
 αὖξάνω (αὖξω): to increase, enrich, 3
 αὖξις, -εως, ἡ: increase, development, 3
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, 9
 ἐκ-κρούω: to knock out = expel, overpower, 1
 ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, contradict (dat) 2
 ἐν-έργεια, ἡ: activity, active exercise, 8
 εὐ-πειθής, -ές: ready to obey, obedient, 2
 ζάω: to live, 4
 ἦκω: to have come, be present, 3
 κακῶς: poorly, badly, 6
 καλέω: to call, summon, invite, 4
 κολλάω: to correct, punish, discipline, 5
 λογισμός ὁ: calculation, reasoning, account, 3

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 7
 μετα-φέρω: to use a metaphor, transfer, 1
 μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, well, fair, 2
 νῦν: now; as it is, 7
 ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 6
 ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 4
 ὀρέγω: to desire, long for, strive (gen), 6
 ὄρεξις, ἡ: desire, longing, striving, 5
 παιδίον, τό: child, young child, 1
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5
 παντα-χόθεν: everywhere, from all sides, 1
 πότερος, -α, -ον: whether, which (of two)? 5
 συγ-γενής, -ές: inborn, natural, 1
 σφοδρός, -όν: violent, impetuous, zealous, 1
 ὕστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; *adv.* later, 5

- 1 πότερον ἀπὸ ποτέρου: *which (of the two) ...from which*; ind. quest. and subject
- οὐθὲν...διαφέρει: *makes no difference*; or 'not at all makes a difference,' inner acc.
- 2 τὰ νῦν: *things at present*
 δῆλον (ἐστίν) δ' ὅτι: *(it is) ...*; impersonal;
 τὸ ὕστερον (καλεῖται): *the later one...*
- 3 οὐ κακῶς: *somewhat well*; 'not badly'
 μετενηνέχθαι: *that the metaphor has been made*; pf. pass. inf. μεταφέρω; Aristotle refers to applying (φέρομεν) the name to (ἐπὶ) children's mistakes in 1119b33-34
 κεκολάσθαι: pf. pass. inf.
- 4 τὸ...ὀρεγόμενον...ἔχον: *(the thing) ...*; acc. subj. of κεκολλάσθαι; mid. and act. pple

- τοιοῦτον (εἰσίν): *(are) such a thing*
 5 κατ'(α)...: *according to...*
 6 ζῶσι: ζά-ουσι
 τούτοις: i.e. τοῖς παιδίοις
 7 εἰ...ἔσται, ἥξει: *if...; fut. more vivid (εἰ fut., fut.); fut. εἰμί ἦκω; translate protasis as pres.*
 ὑπὸ...ἄρχον: *under an authority's control*;
 ἐπὶ πολὺ: *far; 'over much' (S1689.3c)*
 8 τῷ ἀνοήτῳ: *for a foolish person*; interest
 9 τὸ συγγενές: *(its) natural power*
 10 κ(αἰ) (ἐ)ὰν ὧσι, ἐκκρούουσιν: *and if...; pres. general (ἐάν + subj., pres.) 3p εἰμί*
 11 εἶναι αὐτὰς: *that they be...; ind. disc*
 τῷ λόγῳ: *to reason*; dat. obj. of inf.
 12 λέγομεν: *we call (x) (y)*; double acc.

λασμένον—ὥσπερ δὲ τὸν παῖδα δεῖ κατὰ τὸ πρόσταγμα
τοῦ παιδαγωγοῦ ζῆν, οὕτω καὶ τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν κατὰ τὸν
λόγον. διὸ δεῖ τοῦ σώφρονος τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν συμφωνεῖν 15
τῷ λόγῳ· σκοπὸς γὰρ ἀμφοῖν τὸ καλόν, καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖ ὁ
σώφρων ὣν δεῖ καὶ ὡς δεῖ καὶ ὅτε· οὕτω δὲ τάττει καὶ ὁ
λόγος. ταῦτ' οὖν ἡμῖν εἰρήσθω περὶ σωφροσύνης.

ἄμφοι: both (dual), 8

ἐπι-θυμητικός, -ή, -όν: desiring, 2

ζάω: to live, 4

παιδαγωγός, ὁ: pedagogue, tutor, 1

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 5

13 κεκολασμένον: *disciplined*; or 'corrected,'
pf. pass. pple. κολάζω

κατὰ...: *according to...*

14 ζῆν: inf.

καί: *also*

τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν (δεῖ ζῆν): *the desiring part*

κατὰ...: *according to*

15 τοῦ σώφρονος: gen. poss.

τὸ ἐπιθυμητικὸν (δεῖ ζῆν): *the desiring part*

16 τῷ λόγῳ: *with...*; dat. of compound verb

πρόσ-ταγμα, -ατος, τό: order, command, 1

σκοπός, ὁ: target, mark, 2

συμ-φωνέω: be in harmony or agreement, 2

τάττω: to assign, put (in order); order, 2

ἀμφοῖν: dual gen.; i.e. the παιδαγωγός
and λόγος

τὸ καλόν (ἐστίν): *is...*; nom. pred.

17 ὧν δεῖ: *what...*; '(the things) which,' the
missing antecedent is gen. obj. of verb

ὅτε (δεῖ): *experience*; perfect πάσχω

καί: *also*

18 ἡμῖν: dat. of agent with pf. verb

εἰρήσθω: *let...*; 3s pf. pass. imperative

Glossary

Aristotle's Nicomachean Ethics Books II and III

Alphabetized Vocabulary (10 or more times)

The following is a running list of all 152 words that occur ten or more times in Book II and III. A running list is found in the introduction to this volume. These words are not included in the commentary and therefore must be reviewed as soon as possible. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author.

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good, brave, capable, 33
 ἀγνοέω: be ignorant of, be in ignorance, 15
 ἄγνοια, ἡ: ignorance, 14
 αἰρέω: to seize, take; *mid.* choose, 10
 αἰσχρός, -ά, -όν: shameful, disgraceful, 19
 ἀ-κολασία, ἡ: intemperance, licentiousness 11
 ἀ-κόλαστος, -ον: indulgent, intemperate, 24
 ἀκούσια, ἡ: involuntary behavior, 10
 ἄκρος, -η, -ον: topmost, extreme, 13
 ἀλλά: but, 91
 ἄλλος, -η, -ο: other, one...another, 39
 ἀμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, do wrong, 11
 ἄν: modal adv., 70
 ἀνδρεία, ἡ: courage, bravery, manliness, 27
 ἀνδρεῖος, -α, -ον: courageous, brave, manly, 48
 ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: human being, man, 16
 ἀπ-έχω: to be distant, keep away from, 11
 ἀπλῶς: simply; without qualification, 11
 ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 13
 ἀρετή, ἡ: virtue, excellence, 63
 ἀρχή, ἡ: origin, source; beginning, 19
 αὐτός, -ή, -ό: he, she, it; same; -self, 105
 βουλεύω: to deliberate, plan, take counsel, 13
 βούλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 10
 γάρ: for, (yes) for; since, because, 227
 γε: at least, indeed, at any rate, 18
 γίγνομαι: come to be, become, be born, 71
 δέ: but, and, on the other hand, 528
 δειλός, -ή, -όν: cowardly, timid, 16
 δέω: need, lack (gen.); *mid.* ask, request; *impers.* δεῖ, one ought, it is necessary (inf.), 70
 δῆ: exactly, precisely, just; accordingly, 52
 διὰ: through (gen); on account of, 101
 δια-φέρω: differ; surpass, be superior to, 15
 δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right, lawful, fair, 15
 διό: δι' ὃ, on account of which, for which reason, 24
 δοκέω: to seem (good); think, decide, 40

- ἐάν:** εἰ ἄν, if (+ subj.), 12
ἐαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ: himself, her-, it-, them-, 23
εἰ: if, whether, 50
εἶμι: to be, exist, 296
εἰς: into, to, in regard to (acc.), 12
ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 46
ἐκάστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 33
ἐκούσιος, -ον: voluntary; willing, 27
ἐλ-λείπω: to be deficient, fall short, lack, 19
ἐλ-λειψις, -εως, ῆ: deficiency, falling short, 30
ἐν: in, on, among. (+ dat.), 130
ἐναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 14
ἐνεκα: for the sake of, for (+gen.), 14
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some, 11
ἐξίς, -εως, ῆ: disposition, habit, state, 24
ἔοικα: to seem, be like, seem likely, (dat.), 18
ἐπαινέω: to praise, approve, commend, 11
ἐπεί: when, after; since, because, 10
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.), 11
ἐπί: upon (gen.), to (acc.), near, at (dat.); in addition, furthermore, besides, 89
ἐπιθυμία, ῆ: desire, longing, yearning, 21
ἔργον, τό: function, task; deed, work, 11
ἕτερος, -α, -ον: other, different, 13
ἔτι: still, besides, further; in addition, 26
εὖ: well, 28
ἔχω: have; be able; be disposed; know, 62
ἤ: or (either...or); than, 134
ἡδονή, ῆ: pleasure, 40
ἡδύς, -εῖα, -ύ: pleasant; sweet, 29
ἡμεῖς: we, 47
ἥττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 21
θάνατος, -ον: mortal, 10
θαρρέω: to be confident, bold, 10
θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: rash; overly bold, 10
θυμός, ό: anger, passion, spirit, 19
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 15
καί: and; also, even, too; in fact, actually 707
κακία, ῆ: vice, wickedness, cowardice, 14
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 28
καλός, -ή, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 33
κατά: down (from, to), in, according to, in respect to, corresponding to, 86
κίνδυνος, ό: danger, risk, venture, 10
κύριος, -α, -ον: having power, in power over (gen.), 10
λαμβάνω: to receive, grasp, take, 10

- λέγω, ἐρέω, εἶπον: to say, call; mean, 93
 λόγος, ὁ: word, speech, account, principle, 26
 λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest, 12
 λυπέω: to cause pain; *mid.* be in pain, 17
 λύπη, ἡ: pain, 25
 λυπηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, 14
 μάλιστα: most of all; most certainly, especially 22
 μάλλον: more, rather, 50
 μέν: on the one hand, 212
 μέσος, -η, -ον: middle (of), mean, 43
 μεσότης, -της, ἡ: the middle, mean, 34
 μή: not, lest, 70
 μηδ-είς, μηδ-εμία, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 15
 μικρός, -ά, -όν: small, little, 14
 ὁ, ἡ, τό: the, 1409
 οἶδα: to know, 14
 οἷος, -α, -ον: which sort, who; for example, 49
 ὅλως: in general; entirely, 11
 ὁμοίως: in the same way; similarly, 31
 ὀργίζω: to make angry; *mid.* be angry, 10
 ὅς, ἥ, ὅ: who, which, that, 136
 ὅσος -η -ον: as many as; all who, all which 19
 ὅτε: when, at some time, 15
 ὅτι: that; because, 61
 οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, οὐχί: not, 148
 οὐδέ: and not, but not, nor; not even, 65
 οὐδ-είς, οὐδε-μία, οὐδ-έν: no one, nothing, 51
 οὖν: and so, then; at all events, 67
 οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 33
 οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο: this, these, 198
 οὕτως: thus, in this way, 39
 πάθος, -εος, τό: feeling, passion, 21
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 79
 πάσχω: to suffer; allow, experience, 12
 περί: around, about, concerning (acc/gen) 143
 πλείων, πλέων (-ονος) ὁ, ἡ: more, 10
 ποιέω: to do, make; bring about, treat, 28
 ποῖος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 13
 πολὺς, πολλά, πολὺ: much, many, 25
 πράξις, -εως, ἡ: action; transaction, 39
 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 68
 προ-αίρέομαι: to choose, 15
 προ-αίρεσις, -εως, ἡ: choice, 22
 πρὸς: to, in relation to (acc.), near, in addition to (dat.), 70
 πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 10

- πῶς: how in what way?, 18
 πως: somehow, in some/a certain way, 13
 σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperance, prudence, 11
 σώφρων, -οντος: temperate, moderate, 26
 τε: and, both, 25
 τέλος, -εος, τό: end; motive, 29
 τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 10
 τις, τι: anyone, -thing, someone, -thing, 74
 τίς, τί: who?, which?; why?, 29
 τοιοῦτος, -αῦτη, -οὔτο: such, this sort, 73
 τυγχάνω: to chance upon, attain; happen, 13
 ὑπερ-βάλλω: to exceed, overshoot, 22
 ὑπερ-βολή, ἡ: excess, 35
 ὑπό: by, because of, (gen.), under, 22
 ὑπο-μένω: to endure, abide, remain, 20
 φαίνω: show; *mid.* appear, seem, 32
 φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 17
 φημί: to say, claim, assert, 12
 φοβερός, -ά, -όν: fearful, dreadful 15
 φοβέω: to put to flight, terrify, frighten, 23
 φύσις, -εως ἡ: nature, 21
 φύω: grow, be by nature, be natural + inf. 12
 χαίρω: to rejoice in, enjoy (dat); greet, 23
 χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harsh, 12
 ὥς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 61
 ὥσπερ: as, just as, as if, 30